



# **DocBook**

## ***xs/TNG***

# **Reference**

Norman Walsh

Version 1.8.0

Updated: 30 Dec 2022

## Revision History

---

- 1.8.0, 24 Jul 2022

- Reworked CSS. The CSS stylesheets, especially the stylesheets related to print output, have been updated and the mechanism by which CSS links are added to the output has changed.

The `$css-links` parameter no longer exists (nor does the corresponding `$v:css-links` variable). It has been replaced by the `$user-css-links` and `$use-docbook-css` parameters.

- Added an `$output-media` parameter to allow conditional behavior based on output medium (screen or print).
- Added `$page-style` and `$paper-size` parameters for controlling aspects of print output.
- Some class attribute values have been changed.
  - The page style, page size, and “draft” classes are now reflected on the top-level `html` element.
  - The class attribute value “`division`” is added to `book`, `part`, and `reference` elements.
  - The class attribute value “`component`” is added to `acknowledgements`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliography`, `chapter`, `colophon`, `dedication`, `glossary`, `index`, `partintro`, `preface`, and `refentry` elements.
  - The class attribute value “`formalobject`” is added to `equation`, `example`, `figure`, `formalgroup`, and `table` elements.
  - The class attribute value “`informalobject`” is added to `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, and `informaltable` elements.
- There is now CSS support for adding a “draft” watermark to documents with a draft status (for both screen and print renderings).
- An extra wrapper has been added to the content of `revision` in a `revhistory`.
- A bug has been fixed where `sidebar` was accidentally being rendered in the DocBook namespace.
- Prism (<https://prismjs.com/>) highlighting has been updated to version 1.28.0.
- Highlight.js (<https://highlightjs.org/>) highlighting has been updated to version 11.6.0 and is now part of the distribution rather than relying on CDN access.





## Table of Contents

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Part I. Introduction. . . . .                                       | 11 |
| Preface. . . . .  | 13 |
| 1. Getting the stylesheets. . . . .                                 | 15 |
| 1.1 Download the latest release. . . . .                            | 15 |
| 1.2 Getting the release from Maven. . . . .                         | 15 |
| 2. Using the stylesheets. . . . .                                   | 17 |
| 2.1 Using the Jar. . . . .  | 18 |
| 2.2 Using the Python script. . . . .                                | 20 |
| 2.3 Run with Java. . . . .  | 21 |
| 2.4 Run with Docker. . . . .  | 22 |
| 2.5 Extension functions. . . . .                                    | 23 |
| 2.5.1 Extension function debugging. . . . .                         | 24 |
| 2.6 “Chunked” output. . . . .                                       | 25 |
| 2.6.1 Keyboard navigation and speaker notes. . . . .                | 26 |
| 2.7 Effectivity attributes and profiling. . . . .                   | 27 |
| 2.7.1 Effectivity. . . . .  | 27 |
| 2.7.2 Profiling. . . . .  | 29 |
| 2.7.3 Dynamic profiling. . . . .                                    | 29 |
| 2.8 Syntax highlighting. . . . .                                    | 30 |
| 2.9 Print output (dead tree editions). . . . .                      | 30 |
| 3. Customizing the stylesheets. . . . .                             | 31 |
| 3.1 Changing stylesheet parameters. . . . .                         | 31 |
| 3.2 Creating a customization layer. . . . .                         | 32 |
| 3.3 Managing CSS stylesheets. . . . .                               | 36 |
| 3.4 Creating something completely different. . . . .                | 37 |
| 4. Implementation details. . . . .                                  | 41 |
| 4.1 Customizing chunking. . . . .                                   | 41 |
| 4.2 Lengths and units. . . . .                                      | 41 |
| 4.3 Verbatim styles. . . . .  | 42 |
| 4.4 Mediaobject URIs. . . . .                                       | 42 |
| 4.5 Templates. . . . .  | 43 |
| 4.6 Annotations. . . . .  | 44 |
| 5. Building the stylesheets. . . . .                                | 47 |
| 5.1 Prerequisites. . . . .  | 47 |
| 5.2 Repository structure. . . . .                                   | 48 |
| 5.3 Build tasks. . . . .  | 50 |
| 5.4 Running XSpec. . . . .  | 52 |
| Part II. Reference. . . . .   | 53 |
| I. Parameter reference. . . . .                                     | 55 |
| \$additional-languages. . . . .                                     | 56 |
| \$align-char-default, \$align-char-pad, \$align-char-width. . . . . | 57 |
| \$allow-eval. . . . .   | 60 |
| \$annotate-toc. . . . .   | 61 |
| \$annotation-collection. . . . .                                    | 62 |
| \$annotation-mark. . . . .  | 63 |
| \$annotation-placement. . . . .                                     | 64 |

## Table of Contents

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| \$annotation-style. . . . .                                | 65  |
| \$annotations-js. . . . .                                  | 66  |
| \$bibliography-collection. . . . .                         | 67  |
| \$callout-default-column. . . . .                          | 68  |
| \$callout-unicode-start. . . . .                           | 69  |
| \$chunk. . . . .   | 70  |
| \$chunk-exclude. . . . .                                   | 71  |
| \$chunk-include. . . . .                                   | 72  |
| \$chunk-nav. . . . .                                       | 73  |
| \$chunk-nav-js. . . . .                                    | 74  |
| \$chunk-output-base-uri. . . . .                           | 75  |
| \$chunk-renumber-footnotes. . . . .                        | 77  |
| \$chunk-section-depth. . . . .                             | 78  |
| \$classsynopsis-indent. . . . .                            | 79  |
| \$component-numbers-inherit. . . . .                       | 80  |
| \$control-js. . . . .                                      | 81  |
| \$copyright-collapse-years. . . . .                        | 82  |
| \$copyright-year-range-separator. . . . .                  | 83  |
| \$copyright-year-separator. . . . .                        | 84  |
| \$date-date-format, \$date-dateTime-format. . . . .        | 85  |
| \$dc-metadata. . . . .                                     | 86  |
| \$debug. . . . .   | 87  |
| \$default-float-style. . . . .                             | 90  |
| \$default-language. . . . .                                | 91  |
| \$default-length-magnitude, \$default-length-unit. . . . . | 92  |
| \$default-personal-name-style. . . . .                     | 93  |
| \$default-theme. . . . .                                   | 94  |
| \$division-numbers-inherit. . . . .                        | 95  |
| \$docbook-transclusion. . . . .                            | 96  |
| \$dynamic-profile-error. . . . .                           | 97  |
| \$dynamic-profiles. . . . .                                | 98  |
| \$experimental-pmuj. . . . .                               | 99  |
| \$footnote-numeration. . . . .                             | 100 |
| \$formal-object-title-placement. . . . .                   | 101 |
| \$funcsynopsis-default-style. . . . .                      | 102 |
| \$funcsynopsis-table-threshold. . . . .                    | 103 |
| \$funcsynopsis-trailing-punctuation. . . . .               | 104 |
| \$generate-html-page. . . . .                              | 105 |
| \$generate-index. . . . .                                  | 106 |
| \$generate-nested-toc. . . . .                             | 107 |
| \$generate-toc. . . . .                                    | 108 |
| \$generate-trivial-toc. . . . .                            | 109 |
| \$generated-id-root. . . . .                               | 110 |
| \$generated-id-sep. . . . .                                | 111 |
| \$generator-metadata. . . . .                              | 112 |
| \$gentext-language. . . . .                                | 113 |
| \$glossary-collection. . . . .                             | 114 |
| \$glossary-sort-entries. . . . .                           | 115 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| \$html-extension. . . . .                  | 116 |
| \$image-ignore-scaling. . . . .            | 117 |
| \$image-nominal-height. . . . .            | 118 |
| \$image-nominal-width. . . . .             | 119 |
| \$image-property-warning. . . . .          | 120 |
| \$index-on-role, \$index-on-type. . . . .  | 121 |
| \$index-show-entries. . . . .              | 122 |
| \$indexed-section-groups. . . . .          | 123 |
| \$lists-of-equations. . . . .              | 124 |
| \$lists-of-examples. . . . .               | 125 |
| \$lists-of-figures. . . . .                | 126 |
| \$lists-of-procedures. . . . .             | 127 |
| \$lists-of-tables. . . . .                 | 128 |
| \$local-conventions. . . . .               | 129 |
| \$mathml-js. . . . .                       | 131 |
| \$mediaobject-accessibility. . . . .       | 132 |
| \$mediaobject-exclude-extensions. . . . .  | 134 |
| \$mediaobject-input-base-uri. . . . .      | 135 |
| \$mediaobject-output-base-uri. . . . .     | 136 |
| \$nominal-page-width. . . . .              | 137 |
| \$number-single-appendix. . . . .          | 138 |
| \$olink-databases. . . . .                 | 139 |
| \$orderedlist-item-numeration. . . . .     | 140 |
| \$othername-in-middle. . . . .             | 141 |
| \$output-media. . . . .                    | 142 |
| \$oxy-markup. . . . .                      | 143 |
| \$oxy-markup-css. . . . .                  | 144 |
| \$page-style. . . . .                      | 145 |
| \$paper-size. . . . .                      | 146 |
| \$persistent-toc. . . . .                  | 147 |
| \$persistent-toc-css. . . . .              | 148 |
| \$persistent-toc-js. . . . .               | 149 |
| \$persistent-toc-search. . . . .           | 150 |
| \$pixels-per-inch. . . . .                 | 151 |
| \$procedure-step-numeration. . . . .       | 152 |
| \$productionset-lhs-rhs-separator. . . . . | 153 |
| \$profile-arch. . . . .                    | 154 |
| \$profile-audience. . . . .                | 155 |
| \$profile-condition. . . . .               | 156 |
| \$profile-conformance. . . . .             | 157 |
| \$profile-lang. . . . .                    | 158 |
| \$profile-os. . . . .                      | 159 |
| \$profile-outputformat. . . . .            | 160 |
| \$profile-revision. . . . .                | 161 |
| \$profile-revisionflag. . . . .            | 162 |
| \$profile-role. . . . .                    | 163 |
| \$profile-security. . . . .                | 164 |
| \$profile-separator. . . . .               | 165 |

## Table of Contents

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| \$profile-userlevel. . . . .                   | 166 |
| \$profile-vendor. . . . .                      | 167 |
| \$profile-wordsz. . . . .                      | 168 |
| \$theme-picker. . . . .                        | 169 |
| \$transclusion-prefix-separator. . . . .       | 170 |
| \$qandadiv-default-toc. . . . .                | 171 |
| \$qandaset-default-label. . . . .              | 172 |
| \$qandaset-default-toc. . . . .                | 173 |
| \$relax-ng-grammar. . . . .                    | 174 |
| \$refentry-generate-name. . . . .              | 175 |
| \$refentry-generate-title. . . . .             | 176 |
| \$resource-base-uri. . . . .                   | 177 |
| \$revhistory-style. . . . .                    | 178 |
| \$section-numbers. . . . .                     | 180 |
| \$section-numbers-inherit. . . . .             | 181 |
| \$section-toc-depth. . . . .                   | 182 |
| \$segmentedlist-style. . . . .                 | 183 |
| \$show-remarks. . . . .                        | 185 |
| \$sidebar-as-aside. . . . .                    | 186 |
| \$sort-collation. . . . .                      | 187 |
| \$table-accessibility. . . . .                 | 188 |
| \$table-footnote-numeration. . . . .           | 191 |
| \$use-docbook-css. . . . .                     | 192 |
| \$user-css-links. . . . .                      | 193 |
| \$variablelist-termlength-threshold. . . . .   | 194 |
| \$verbatim-callouts. . . . .                   | 195 |
| \$verbatim-line-style. . . . .                 | 197 |
| \$verbatim-number-every-nth. . . . .           | 198 |
| \$verbatim-number-first-line. . . . .          | 199 |
| \$verbatim-number-minlines. . . . .            | 200 |
| \$verbatim-numbered-elements. . . . .          | 201 |
| \$verbatim-plain-style. . . . .                | 202 |
| \$verbatim-space. . . . .                      | 203 |
| \$verbatim-style-default. . . . .              | 204 |
| \$verbatim-syntax-highlight-css. . . . .       | 205 |
| \$verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages. . . . . | 206 |
| \$verbatim-syntax-highlighter. . . . .         | 207 |
| \$verbatim-trim-trailing-blank-lines. . . . .  | 209 |
| \$xlink-icon-closed. . . . .                   | 210 |
| \$xlink-icon-open. . . . .                     | 211 |
| \$xlink-js. . . . .                            | 212 |
| \$xlink-style. . . . .                         | 213 |
| \$xlink-style-default. . . . .                 | 214 |
| \$xspec. . . . .                               | 215 |
| II. Variables reference. . . . .               | 217 |
| \$v:admonition-icons. . . . .                  | 218 |
| \$arg-choice-def-close-str, . . . . .          | 219 |
| \$v:annotation-close. . . . .                  | 223 |



|  |     |
|--|-----|
| \$v:bridgehead-map. . . . .                  | 224 |
| \$v:chunk. . . . .                           | 225 |
| \$v:chunk-filter-namespaces. . . . .         | 226 |
| \$v:chunk-renumber-footnotes. . . . .        | 227 |
| \$err:DYNAMIC-PROFILE-EVAL-ERROR. . . . .    | 228 |
| \$err:DYNAMIC-PROFILE-SYNTAX-ERROR. . . . .  | 229 |
| \$err:INTERNAL-HIGHLIGHT-ERROR. . . . .      | 230 |
| \$err:INTERNAL-RENUMBER-ERROR. . . . .       | 231 |
| \$err:INVALID-AREAREFS. . . . .              | 232 |
| \$err:INVALID-CALS. . . . .                  | 233 |
| \$err:INVALID-CONSTRAINT. . . . .            | 234 |
| \$err:INVALID-DYNAMIC-PROFILE-ERROR. . . . . | 235 |
| \$err:INVALID-INJECT. . . . .                | 236 |
| \$err:INVALID-NAME-STYLE. . . . .            | 237 |
| \$err:INVALID-PRODUCTIONRECAP. . . . .       | 238 |
| \$err:INVALID-TEMPLATE. . . . .              | 239 |
| \$v:debug. . . . .                           | 240 |
| \$v:dynamic-profile-variables. . . . .       | 241 |
| \$v:formal-object-title-placement. . . . .   | 242 |
| \$v:highlight-js-head-elements. . . . .      | 243 |
| \$v:image-nominal-height. . . . .            | 244 |
| \$v:image-nominal-width. . . . .             | 245 |
| \$v:invisible-characters. . . . .            | 246 |
| \$locales. . . . .                           | 247 |
| \$v:mediaobject-input-base-uri. . . . .      | 248 |
| \$v:mediaobject-output-base-uri. . . . .     | 249 |
| \$v:nominal-page-width. . . . .              | 250 |
| \$v:olink-databases. . . . .                 | 251 |
| \$v:personal-name-styles. . . . .            | 252 |
| \$v:prism-js-head-elements. . . . .          | 253 |
| \$v:templates. . . . .                       | 254 |
| \$v:theme-list. . . . .                      | 255 |
| \$v:title-properties. . . . .                | 256 |
| \$v:titlepage-default. . . . .               | 259 |
| \$v:toc-close. . . . .                       | 260 |
| \$v:toc-open. . . . .                        | 261 |
| \$v:unit-scale. . . . .                      | 262 |
| \$v:user-title-properties. . . . .           | 264 |
| \$v:user-xref-properties. . . . .            | 265 |
| \$v:verbatim-callouts. . . . .               | 266 |
| \$v:verbatim-line-style. . . . .             | 267 |
| \$v:verbatim-number-every-nth. . . . .       | 268 |
| \$v:verbatim-number-first-line. . . . .      | 269 |
| \$v:verbatim-number-minlines. . . . .        | 270 |
| \$v:verbatim-numbered-elements. . . . .      | 271 |
| \$v:verbatim-plain-style. . . . .            | 272 |
| \$v:verbatim-properties. . . . .             | 273 |
| \$v:verbatim-space. . . . .                  | 274 |

## Table of Contents

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| \$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages. . . . .        | 275 |
| \$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-options. . . . .          | 276 |
| \$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-pygments-options. . . . . | 277 |
| \$v:VERSION. . . . .                                    | 278 |
| \$v:VERSION-ID. . . . .                                 | 279 |
| \$v:xref-properties. . . . .                            | 280 |
| III. Function reference. . . . .                        | 283 |
| f:absolute-length. . . . .                              | 284 |
| f:attributes. . . . .                                   | 285 |
| f:cals-colsep. . . . .                                  | 286 |
| f:cals-rowsep. . . . .                                  | 287 |
| f:check-gentext. . . . .                                | 288 |
| f:chunk. . . . .  | 289 |
| f:chunk-filename. . . . .                               | 290 |
| f:chunk-title. . . . .                                  | 291 |
| f:css-length. . . . .                                   | 292 |
| f:css-property. . . . .                                 | 293 |
| f:date-format. . . . .                                  | 294 |
| f:empty-length. . . . .                                 | 296 |
| f:equal-lengths. . . . .                                | 298 |
| f:generate-id. . . . .                                  | 299 |
| f:gentext. . . . .                                      | 300 |
| f:gentext-letters. . . . .                              | 301 |
| f:gentext-letters-for-language. . . . .                 | 302 |
| f:highlight-verbatim. . . . .                           | 303 |
| f:href. . . . .   | 304 |
| f:id. . . . .   | 305 |
| f:intra-number-separator. . . . .                       | 306 |
| f:is-empty-length. . . . .                              | 307 |
| f:is-true. . . . .                                      | 308 |
| f:l10n-language. . . . .                                | 309 |
| f:label-separator. . . . .                              | 310 |
| f:language. . . . .                                     | 311 |
| f:length-string. . . . .                                | 312 |
| f:length-units. . . . .                                 | 313 |
| f:make-length. . . . .                                  | 314 |
| f:number-separator. . . . .                             | 315 |
| f:object-align. . . . .                                 | 316 |
| f:object-contentheight. . . . .                         | 317 |
| f:object-contentwidth. . . . .                          | 318 |
| f:object-height. . . . .                                | 319 |
| f:object-properties. . . . .                            | 320 |
| f:object-scale. . . . .                                 | 323 |
| f:object-scalefit. . . . .                              | 324 |
| f:object-valign. . . . .                                | 325 |
| f:object-width. . . . .                                 | 326 |
| f:orderedlist-item-numeration. . . . .                  | 327 |
| f:orderedlist-item-number. . . . .                      | 328 |

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| f:orderedlist-startingnumber. . . . . | 329 |
| f:parse-length. . . . .               | 330 |
| f:pi. . . . .                         | 331 |
| f:pi-attributes. . . . .              | 332 |
| f:post-label-punctuation. . . . .     | 333 |
| f:refsection. . . . .                 | 334 |
| f:relative-length. . . . .            | 335 |
| f:resolve-object-uri. . . . .         | 336 |
| f:section. . . . .                    | 337 |
| f:section-depth. . . . .              | 338 |
| f:select-mediaobject. . . . .         | 339 |
| f:select-mediaobject-data. . . . .    | 340 |
| f:spaces. . . . .                     | 341 |
| f:step-number. . . . .                | 342 |
| f:step-numeration. . . . .            | 343 |
| f:syntax-highlight. . . . .           | 344 |
| f:target. . . . .                     | 345 |
| f:template. . . . .                   | 346 |
| f:tokenize-on-char. . . . .           | 347 |
| f:unique-id. . . . .                  | 348 |
| f:verbatim-highlight. . . . .         | 349 |
| f:verbatim-numbered. . . . .          | 350 |
| f:verbatim-style. . . . .             | 351 |
| f:verbatim-trim-trailing. . . . .     | 352 |
| f:xlink-style. . . . .                | 353 |
| f:xpointer-idref. . . . .             | 354 |
| ext:cwd. . . . .                      | 355 |
| ext:image-metadata. . . . .           | 356 |
| ext:image-properties. . . . .         | 358 |
| ext:pygmentize. . . . .               | 359 |
| ext:pygmentize-available. . . . .     | 360 |
| ext:xinclude. . . . .                 | 361 |
| ext:validate-with-relax-ng. . . . .   | 362 |
| IV. Template reference. . . . .       | 365 |
| t:biblioentry. . . . .                | 366 |
| t:bottom-nav. . . . .                 | 367 |
| t:chunk-cleanup. . . . .              | 368 |
| t:chunk-footnotes. . . . .            | 369 |
| t:chunk-output. . . . .               | 370 |
| t:docbook. . . . .                    | 371 |
| t:generate-index. . . . .             | 372 |
| t:imagemap. . . . .                   | 373 |
| t:index-zone-reference. . . . .       | 374 |
| t:inline. . . . .                     | 375 |
| t:person-name. . . . .                | 377 |
| t:person-name-family-given. . . . .   | 380 |
| t:person-name-first-last. . . . .     | 381 |
| t:person-name-last-first. . . . .     | 383 |

## Table of Contents

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| t:person-name-list. . . . .            | 384 |
| t:preprocess. . . . .                  | 385 |
| t:process. . . . .                     | 386 |
| t:postprocess. . . . .                 | 387 |
| t:table-footnotes. . . . .             | 388 |
| t:top-nav. . . . .                     | 389 |
| t:xlink. . . . .                       | 390 |
| V. Mode reference. . . . .             | 391 |
| m:acceptable-mediaobject. . . . .      | 392 |
| m:acceptable-mediaobject-data. . . . . | 393 |
| m:annotation-content. . . . .          | 394 |
| m:ansi. . . . .                        | 395 |
| m:ansi-table. . . . .                  | 396 |
| m:attributes. . . . .                  | 397 |
| m:biblioentry. . . . .                 | 398 |
| m:bibliomixed. . . . .                 | 399 |
| m:callout-bug. . . . .                 | 400 |
| m:callout-link. . . . .                | 401 |
| m:chunk-cleanup. . . . .               | 402 |
| m:chunk-filename. . . . .              | 403 |
| m:chunk-output. . . . .                | 404 |
| m:chunk-title. . . . .                 | 405 |
| m:chunk-write. . . . .                 | 406 |
| m:copyright-years. . . . .             | 407 |
| m:crossref. . . . .                    | 408 |
| m:crossref-inherit-separator. . . . .  | 409 |
| m:crossref-label. . . . .              | 410 |
| m:crossref-label-separator. . . . .    | 411 |
| m:crossref-number. . . . .             | 412 |
| m:crossref-number-separator. . . . .   | 413 |
| m:crossref-prefix. . . . .             | 414 |
| m:crossref-suffix. . . . .             | 415 |
| m:crossref-title. . . . .              | 416 |
| m:details. . . . .                     | 417 |
| m:details-attribute. . . . .           | 418 |
| m:docbook. . . . .                     | 419 |
| m:footnote-number. . . . .             | 420 |
| m:footnotes. . . . .                   | 421 |
| m:generate-titlepage. . . . .          | 422 |
| m:headline. . . . .                    | 423 |
| m:headline-label. . . . .              | 424 |
| m:headline-label-separator. . . . .    | 425 |
| m:headline-number. . . . .             | 426 |
| m:headline-number-separator. . . . .   | 427 |
| m:headline-prefix. . . . .             | 428 |
| m:headline-suffix. . . . .             | 429 |
| m:headline-title. . . . .              | 430 |
| m:highlight-options. . . . .           | 431 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| m:html-body-script. . . . .                   | 432 |
| m:html-head. . . . .                          | 433 |
| m:html-head-last. . . . .                     | 434 |
| m:html-head-links. . . . .                    | 435 |
| m:html-head-script. . . . .                   | 436 |
| m:htmltable. . . . .                          | 437 |
| m:index-div. . . . .                          | 438 |
| m:index-primary. . . . .                      | 439 |
| m:index-secondary. . . . .                    | 440 |
| m:index-see. . . . .                          | 441 |
| m:index-seealso. . . . .                      | 442 |
| m:index-tertiary. . . . .                     | 443 |
| m:kr. . . . .                                 | 444 |
| m:kr-args. . . . .                            | 445 |
| m:kr-table. . . . .                           | 446 |
| m:kr-table-args. . . . .                      | 447 |
| m:link. . . . .                               | 448 |
| m:list-of-equations. . . . .                  | 449 |
| m:list-of-examples. . . . .                   | 450 |
| m:list-of-figures. . . . .                    | 451 |
| m:list-of-procedures. . . . .                 | 452 |
| m:list-of-tables. . . . .                     | 453 |
| m:production-number. . . . .                  | 454 |
| m:profile. . . . .                            | 455 |
| m:pygments-options. . . . .                   | 456 |
| m:revhistory-list. . . . .                    | 457 |
| m:revhistory-table. . . . .                   | 458 |
| m:seclist-table. . . . .                      | 459 |
| m:segtitle-in-seg. . . . .                    | 460 |
| m:synopfragment-bug. . . . .                  | 461 |
| m:synopsis. . . . .                           | 462 |
| m:title. . . . .                              | 463 |
| m:titlepage. . . . .                          | 464 |
| m:to-uppercase. . . . .                       | 465 |
| m:toc. . . . .                                | 466 |
| m:toc-entry. . . . .                          | 467 |
| VI. Processing instruction reference. . . . . | 469 |
| current-dateTime. . . . .                     | 470 |
| db. . . . .                                   | 471 |
| DocBook-xslTNG-version. . . . .               | 472 |
| system-property. . . . .                      | 473 |
| A. GNU Free Documentation License. . . . .    | 475 |
| Glossary. . . . .                             | 483 |
| References. . . . .                           | 485 |
| Acknowledgements. . . . .                     | 487 |
| Index. . . . .                                | 489 |
| Index by module. . . . .                      | 495 |

## List of Figures

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 2.1.1 The sample document: article.xml. . . . .           | 19  |
| 1.1 An example of revhistory rendered as a table. . . . . | 179 |
| 1.2 An example of revhistory rendered as a list. . . . .  | 179 |
| 1.1 Segmented list formatted as a table. . . . .          | 184 |
| 1.2 Segmented list formatted as a list. . . . .           | 184 |
| 1.1 Title Properties. . . . .                             | 258 |
| 1.1 Recognized units of measure. . . . .                  | 263 |
| 1.1 Cross-reference Properties (numbered). . . . .        | 282 |
| 1.2 Cross-reference Properties (contextual). . . . .      | 282 |
| 1.1 An amaryllis. . . . .                                 | 322 |

## List of Tables

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 2.7.1.1 Common DocBook effectivity attributes. . . . . | 27  |
| 1.1 Default keyboard navigation keys. . . . .          | 73  |
| 1.1 Square numbers. . . . .                            | 190 |

## List of Examples

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 2.7.1.1 A contrived effectivity example. . . . .      | 28  |
| 1.1 An example of char alignment. . . . .             | 58  |
| 1.1 An example of media object accessibility. . . . . | 132 |
| 1.1 An example of char alignment. . . . .             | 178 |
| 1.1 An example of table accessibility. . . . .        | 188 |
| 1.1 An example of a cmdsynopsis. . . . .              | 221 |
| 1.1 Several dates in ISO 8601 formats. . . . .        | 294 |
| 1.1 The FAMILY-given name style. . . . .              | 380 |
| 1.1 The first-last name style. . . . .                | 381 |
| 1.1 The last-first name style. . . . .                | 383 |

# Part I. Introduction





# Preface

These stylesheets are the third iteration of stylesheets for DocBook that I've written. I started working on the XSLT 1.0 Stylesheets for DocBook (<https://github.com/docbook/xslt10-stylesheets>) in the 90's, before XSLT 1.0 was even a W3C Recommendation. I started working on the XSLT 2.0 Stylesheets for DocBook (<https://github.com/docbook/xslt20-stylesheets>) just around the time when XSLT 2.0 became a W3C Recommendation. I wrote most of *DocBook xslTNG* just a month or so before the third anniversary of the XSLT 3.0 Recommendation.

Why did it take so long?

To answer that question, we need to reflect for a moment on XSLT and its place in the XML ecosystem. When XSLT arrived on the scene, we were near the peak of XML enthusiasm. Not only was XML supported everywhere, it was possible to imagine XSLT everywhere as well. Certainly, the presence of XSLT in the browser felt significant at the time.

The ubiquity of XML and the fact that XSLT was “just an XML vocabulary” may have contributed to another significant phenomenon: lots of users who did not self identify as programmers were learning to use XSLT and doing significant things with it.

There were other tools available for transforming markup at the time, and arguably some of them were better than XSLT, but they were programming languages and you had to be a programmer to use them. They were also mostly commercial applications not widely available to casual users.

XSLT was free, it was everywhere, and it was used by everyone, not “just” programmers. It was the clear winner then and remains the clear winner today in terms of markup transformation.

You could do a lot of things with *XSLT 1.0*. You could do a lot more things than you might at first even have thought possible. (In fact, you could do all things, but the Turing complete nature of XSLT isn't relevant here.) Some very common tasks, like grouping, were possible but difficult. Lots of very useful things were either not possible or required extensions: regular expressions, functions, date and time formatting, creating special characters in the output, to name just a few.

*XSLT 2.0* solved all of these problems (and more). Significantly, I think, all of these new features appealed directly to almost all users of XSLT 1.0. Everyone had encountered a grouping problem (building an index, for example). Everyone had wanted regular expression matching or date formatting. Lots of users wanted to write more sophisticated predicates (and many were willing to learn how to use functions to achieve that result).

*XSLT 3.0* arguably introduces larger and more dramatic features than XSLT 2.0 did. There are a bunch of new features designed to enable streaming processing; there are significant software engineering improvements: packaging, exception handling, and assertions; there are common programming language constructs like maps and arrays. There is also a

selection of features inherited from updates to XPath (new functions, a subset of `let` syntax, and support for higher order functions, for example).

What's curious, I think, is that many of these features are probably less immediately appealing to many (most?) current users. XSLT 2.0 doesn't feel constraining in the same way that XSLT 1.0 did, and the features in XSLT 3.0 don't immediately and obviously solve problems that most users have.

Streaming, for example, is incredibly powerful and it's an important and significant milestone in markup processing. It makes it possible to solve whole classes of problems that were previously impossible to solve or required enormously expensive hardware. But my laptop will quite easily process a book full of complex markup that runs to hundreds of pages. I don't have any problems that require a streaming processor.

Likewise, packaging is useful and important. The *DocBook xslTNG* stylesheets should absolutely be a package. But that's not true of a lot of stylesheets. There might be software engineering benefit in making a package even for stylesheets that you don't intend to distribute, but that's more likely to appeal to people who think of what they're doing is programming.

Nevertheless, there are lots of good reasons to use XSLT 3.0 even if you are “only” transforming documents and even if you don't think of writing transformations as programming.

# 1. Getting the stylesheets

There are three ways to get the stylesheets: you can download the latest release from GitHub, you can get them from Maven, or you can clone the repository (<https://github.com/docbook/xslTNG>) and build them yourself. We'll cover the first two options in this chapter; *Chapter 5, Building the stylesheets* covers the last option in detail.

## 1.1 Download the latest release

The latest release is always available from the GitHub releases page (<https://github.com/docbook/xslTNG/releases>). At the time of publication, the latest release was version 1.8.0.

Distributed this way, you'll get a ZIP file that contains the stylesheets plus a number of ancillary files and tools. These are mostly covered in the next chapter *Chapter 2, Using the stylesheets*.

You can unzip the file anywhere that's convenient: in your home directory or in a system-wide location.

## 1.2 Getting the release from Maven

The latest release is always available from Maven (<https://search.maven.org/search?q=org.docbook.docbook-xslTNG>)<sup>1</sup>.

The group, artifact, and version ID for the latest release at the time of publication is:

```
org.docbook:docbook-xslTNG:1.8.0
```

If you're comfortable using Maven, I'm going to assume that's all you need to know.

The Maven distribution differs from the zip file in a couple of ways:

1. It doesn't bundle any of the dependencies. The ZIP file is more akin to an “uber” or “fat” jar (<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/11947037/what-is-an-uber-jar>); it includes (some of) the core dependencies so that it works out-of-the-box. Maven is designed to resolve dependencies, so that shouldn't be necessary here.
2. The Maven jar doesn't include the Python script or the extra resources (CSS and JavaScript files) because it doesn't seem like it would be convenient to extract them

---

<sup>1</sup> With the caveat that it sometimes takes a few hours for the releases to make their way from the registry onto the website. If you're chasing the very latest release and it's just been published, it may be available before it appears on the website.

## 1. Getting the stylesheets

from the Maven jar (which will probably be installed deep in some repository hierarchy well out of sight). Consequently, you may want to download the distribution periodically as well.

## 2. Using the stylesheets

In principle, the stylesheets will run with any conformant XSLT 3.0 processor. For many users, that means Saxon (<http://saxonica.com/>). Although earlier versions may work, Saxon 10.1 or later is recommended.

In principle, the instructions for using the stylesheets are straightforward: using your XSLT 3.0 processor of choice, transform your DocBook source documents with the `docbook.xsl` stylesheet in the `xslt` directory of the distribution.

In practice, for most users, running the stylesheets will require getting a Java environment configured appropriately. For many, one of the most significant challenges is getting all of the dependencies sorted out. Modern software development, for better or worse, often consists of one library relying on another which relies on another, etc.

The *DocBook xslTNG* stylesheets attempt to simplify this process, especially for the “out of the box” experience by providing two convenience methods for running the stylesheets: a jar file with a `Main` class, and a Python script that attempts, among other things, to make sure all of the dependencies are available.

If you’re an experience Java user, you may prefer to simply run the stylesheets directly with Java.

Irrespective of which method you choose, running the stylesheets is simply a matter of processing your input document “*myfile.xml*” with “`xslt/docbook.xsl`”. For example:

```
$ saxon myfile.xml -xsl:xslt/docbook.xsl -o:myfile.html
```

The exact path to `docbook.xsl` will vary, of course, but it’s in the `xslt` directory of the distribution.

### Note



The resulting HTML document contains references to CSS stylesheets and possibly JavaScript libraries. The output won't look as nice in your browser if those resources aren't available. They're in the `resources` directory of the distribution. A quick and easy way to see the results is simply to send the output to the `samples` directory from the distribution. The resources have already been copied into that directory. In the longer run, you'll want to make sure that they get copied into the output directory for each of your projects.

Alternatively, you can copy them to a web location of your choosing and point to them there. You can even point to them in the DocBook CDN (<https://cdn.docbook.org/release/xsltn/current/resources>), but beware that those are not immutable. The "current" version will change with every release and versioned releases will not persist indefinitely.

Change the `$resource-base-uri` to adjust the paths used in the output document.

Many aspects of the transformation can be controlled simply by setting parameters (see *Reference I, Parameter reference*). It's also possible to change the transformation by writing your own customization layer (see *Chapter 3, Customizing the stylesheets*).

## 2.1 Using the Jar

The ZIP distribution includes a JAR file that you can run directly. That JAR file is `$ROOT/lib/docbook-xslTNG-version.jar` where "`$ROOT`" is whatever directory you chose to unzip the distribution into and `version` is the stylesheet version.

Assuming you unzipped the version 1.8.0 distribution into `/home/ndw/xsltn`, you can run the JAR like this:

```
java -jar /home/ndw/xsltn/lib/docbook-xslTNG-1.8.0.jar
```

Let's try it out. Open a shell window and change to the samples directory, `/home/ndw/xsltn/samples` assuming you unzipped it as described above. Now run the java command:

```
$ java -jar ../lib/docbook-xslTNG-1.8.0.jar article.xml
<!DOCTYPE html><html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
...more HTML here...
<nav class="bottom"></nav></body></html>
```

That big splash of HTML was your first DocBook document formatted by the stylesheets! Slightly more usefully, you can save that HTML in a file:

```
$ java -jar ../libs/docbook-xslTNG-1.8.0.jar article.xml \  
-o:article.html
```

If you now open `article.html` in your favorite web browser, you'll see the transformed sample document which should look like *Figure 2.1.1, The sample document: article.xml*.



The JAR file, run this way, accepts the same command line options (<https://www.saxonica.com/html/documentation/using-xsl/commandline/>) as Saxon, with a few caveats:

No `-x`, `-y`, or `-r` options

The executable in the JAR file automatically configures Saxon to use a catalog-based resolver and points the resolver at a catalog that includes the files in the distribution.

No `-init` option

The *DocBook xslTNG* extension functions (extensions) will be registered automatically.

Multiple `-catalog` options

You can repeat the `-catalog` option. All of the catalogs you specify will be searched before the default catalog.

Default stylesheet

If you do not specify a stylesheet with the `-xsl` option, the `xslt/docbook.xsl` stylesheet will be used automatically.

## 2.2 Using the Python script

The ZIP distribution includes a Python script in the `bin` directory. This helper script is a convenience wrapper around Saxon. It sets up the Java classpath and automatically configures a catalog resolver and the DocBook extension functions.

### Important



The script requires the `click` and `pygments` packages, which you must install with `pip` before running the script. For example:

```
python3 -m pip install pygments=2.6.1 click
```

This script behaves much like the JAR file described in *Section 2.1, Using the Jar*. In particular, it accepts the same command line options (<https://www.saxonica.com/html/documentation/using-xsl/commandline/>) as Saxon, with the same caveats.

The significant feature of the Python script is that it will attempt to sort out the dependencies for you. It assumes that you've used Maven to install the package and its dependencies, so you'll have to have installed Maven (<http://maven.apache.org/>). How you do that varies by platform, but your package manager probably has it.

The following command will assure that you've downloaded all of the necessary dependencies. You only have to do this once.

```
$ mvn org.apache.maven.plugins:maven-dependency-plugin:2.4:get \
-Dartifact=org.docbook:docbook-xsltNG:1.8.0
```

That might take a while.

The script will work through the dependencies that you have installed, and the things that they depend on, and construct a Java class path that includes them all.

The script stores its configuration in `.docbook-xsltng.json` in your home directory.

Options passed to the script are processed as follows: the initial options, all introduced by two hyphens, are interpreted by this script; all the remaining options are passed directly to Saxon.

The script options are:

`--help`

Prints a usage message.



## 2.3 Run with Java

`--config:filename`

Use *filename* as the configuration file. The default configuration file is `.docbook-xsltng.json` in your home directory.

`--resources:dir`

This option will copy the resources directory (the CSS and JavaScript files) from the distribution into the directory where your output files are going, *dir*. If *dir* is not specified, the script attempts to work out the directory from the `-o` option provided to Saxon. If no directory is specified and it can't work out what the directory is, it does nothing.

`--java:javaexec`

Use *javaexec* as the Java executable. The default java executable is the first one on your `PATH`.

`--home:dir`

Use *dir* as the *DocBook xslTNG* home directory. This should be the location where you unzipped the distribution. (You probably shouldn't change this.)

`--verbose`

Enables *verbose* mode; it prints more messages about what it finds.

`--debug`

Enables *debug* mode. Instead of running the transformation, it will print out the command that would have been run.

`--`

Immediately stop interpreting options. Everything that follows this option will be passed to Saxon, even if it begins with two hyphens.

## 2.3 Run with Java

Assuming you've organized your class path so that all of the dependencies are available (you may find that using a tool like Gradle or Maven simplifies this process), simply run the Saxon class.

For Saxon HE, the class is `net.sf.saxon.Transform`. For Saxon PE and EE, the class is `com.saxonica.Transform`.

## 2.4 Run with Docker

This is experimental.

The `docker` directory contains an experimental Dockerfile. Using docker allows you to isolate the environment necessary to run the *DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets* from your local environment.

Using Docker is a three step process. Step 0, you have to have installed Docker!

1. Build the docker image. In the `docker` directory, run the docker build command:

```
$ docker build -t docbook-xslt .
```

The “`-t`” option provides a tag for the image; you can make this anything you want. There’s a `VERSION` build argument if you want to build a particular release. For example,

```
$ docker build --build-arg VERSION=0.9.14 -t docbook-xslt .
```

will build a Docker image for the 0.9.14 release of the stylesheets irrespective of the version in the Dockerfile.

2. Run the image, for example:

```
$ docker run docbook-xsltns samples/article.xml
```

If you chose a different tag when you built the image, use that tag in place of “`docbook-xsltns`” in the `run` command. Everything after the container tag becomes options to the `docbook` Python script.

### Note



The context the script runs in is *inside* the container. It can’t for example, see your local filesystem. The example above works because the distribution is unpacked inside the container. So the `article.xml` document isn’t the one on your local filesystem.

You can use the Docker facilities for mounting directories to change what documents the script can access. For example:

```
$ docker run -v /tmp/output -v /path/to/samples:/input \
  docbook-xsltns /input/article.xml chunk=index.html \
```

`chunk-output-base-uri=/output/`

Assuming that the “samples” directory in the distribution is located at `/path/to/samples`, this will chunk the `article.xml` sample document that the script sees in `/input` (which is where you mounted samples) and it will write the output to `/output` (which is where you mounted `/tmp`).

When the script finishes, the chunked output will be in `/tmp`.

### Tip



If you choose to use Docker, you don’t have to rebuild the container everytime a new stylesheet release occurs. You can simply mount the new `xslt` directory into the container like any other directory.

## 2.5 Extension functions

The stylesheets are distributed with several extension functions:

`ext:cwd()`

Returns the “current working directory” where the processor is running.

`ext:image-properties()`

Returns basic properties of an image, width and height.

`ext:image-metadata()`

Returns much more comprehensive image properties and understands far more image types than `ext:image-properties()`. Requires the *metadata-extractor* libraries.

`ext:pygmentize()`

Runs the external *Pygments* processor on a verbatim listing to add syntax highlighting.

`ext:pygmentize-available()`

Returns true if the external *Pygments* processor is available on the current system.

## 2. Using the stylesheets

### `ext:xinclude()`

Performs *XInclude* processing. This extension supports the basic XPointer schemes, *RFC 5147* fragment identifiers, and *search*, a scheme that supports searching in text documents.

### `ext:validate-with-relax-ng()`

Performs RELAX NG validation.

At the time of this writing, all of these extension functions require Saxon 10.1 or later. Make sure that the `docbook-xsltng-version.jar` file is on your class path and use the Saxon `-init` option to load them:

`-init:org.docbook.xsltng.extensions.Register`

## 2.5.1 Extension function debugging

When an extension function fails, or produces result other than what you expect, it can be difficult sometimes to work out what happened. You can enable debugging messages by setting the the system property `org.docbook.xsltng.verbose`.

Setting the property to the value “`true`” enables all of the debugging messages. For a more selective approach, set it to a comma separated list of keyword values.

The following keywords are recognized:

### `registration`

Enables messages related to function registration.

### `image-properties`

Enables messages related to image properties.

### `image-errors`

Enables messages related to image properties, but only when the function was unable to find the properties or encountered some sort of error condition.

### `pygmentize-show-command`

Enables a message that will show the pygmentize command as it was run.

### `pygmentize-show-results`

Enables a message that will show the output of the pygmentize command, before it is processed by the function.

`pygmentize-errors`

Enables messages related to errors encountered attempting to highlight listings with `pygmentize`.

## 2.6 “Chunked” output

Transforming “`myfile.xml`” with `docbook.xsl` usually produces a single HTML document. For large documents, books like this one for example, it’s sometimes desirable to break the input document into a collection of web pages. You can achieve this with the *DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets* by setting two parameters:

`$chunk`

This parameter should be set to the name that you want to use for the first, or top, page of the result. The name “`index.html`” is a common choice.

`$chunk-output-base-uri`

This parameter should be set to the absolute path where you want to use as the base URI for the result documents, for example `/home/ndw/output/guide/`.

### Note



The trailing slash is important, this is a URI. If you specify only `/home/ndw/output/guide`, the base URI will be taken to be `/home/ndw/output/`, and the documents won’t have the URIs you expect.

This output URI has nothing to do with where your documents are ultimately published and the documents themselves won’t contain any references to it. It simply establishes the root of output. If you’re running your XSLT processor from the command line, it’s likely that the documents will be written to that location. If you’re running an XProc pipeline, it simply controls the URIs that appear on the secondary result port.

Many aspects of chunking can be easily customized. A few of the most relevant parameters and templates are:

`$chunk-include` and `$chunk-exclude`

Taken together, these two parameters determine what elements in your source document will be considered “chunks” in the output.

## 2. Using the stylesheets

### `$persistent-toc`

If this parameter is true, then a JavaScript “fly-out” table of contents will be available on every page.

### `$chunk-nav`

This parameter, discussed more thoroughly in *Section 2.6.1, Keyboard navigation and speaker notes* enables keyboard navigation between chunks.

### `t:top-nav` and `t:bottom-nav`

These templates control how the top-of-page and bottom-of-page navigation aids are constructed.

## 2.6.1 Keyboard navigation and speaker notes

If the `$chunk-nav` parameter is true, a reference to an additional JavaScript library will be included in the resulting pages. This library supports keyboard navigation between the pages. The navigation keys are described in the parameter reference page.

There is an additional customization layer ( `xslt/speaker-notes.xsl` ) provided for adding speaker notes to the pages. This is provided both as an example of a customization layer and because the author finds it convenient.

If you use the speaker notes customization layer, the any top-level element in a chunk with the role “`speaker-notes`” will be suppressed from the default presentation. If you press “`[S]`” on the page, then you’ll get a “speaker notes” view of the page.

This can be combined with another extension, the use of browser local storage, to create a simple presentation system. Add this `meta` tag to the `info` element of your document:

```
<meta xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
      name="localStorage.key" content="keyname"/>
```

That will cause the pages to keep track of their location using the “`keyname`” property in local storage. This is important because it enables the following trick:

1. Configure keyboard navigation, speaker notes, and local storage in your document.
2. Arrange for your document to be served up from a web server. You can do this by running one locally or by putting the documents on a web server somewhere else.
3. Open up the main page of your document in a browser.
4. Open up a second browser *window* pointing to the same page. Navigate back and forth between the pages. You should see that the two windows stay in sync.

5. Now press “**S**” in one of the windows and navigate around. You should see that the two windows stay in sync and that your speaker notes are consistently presented in one of the windows.

I often use this trick when I’m giving presentations. I can project the slides in one browser window and keep the other browser window on my laptop. This allows me to see my notes while easily projecting the “real” content.

## 2.7 Effectivity attributes and profiling

When documenting computer hardware and software systems, it’s very common to have different documentation sets that overlap significantly. Documentation for two different models of network router, for example, might differ only in a few specific details. Or a user guide aimed at experts might have a lot in common with the new user guide.

### 2.7.1 Effectivity

There are many ways to address this problem, but one of the simplest is to identify the “effectivity” of different parts of a document. Effectivity in this context means identifying the parts of a document that are effective for different audiences.

When a document is formatted, the stylesheets can selectively include or omit elements based on their configured effectivity. This “profiled” version of the document is the one that’s explicitly targeted to the audience specified.

DocBook supports a wide variety of common attributes for this purpose:

**Table 2.7.1.1 Common DocBook effectivity attributes**

| Attribute    | Nominal effectivity axis                |
|--------------|---|
| arch         | The architecture, Intel or AMD          |
| audience     | The audience, operations or development |
| condition    | Any condition (semantically neutral)    |
| conformance  | The conformance level                   |
| os           | The operating system, Windows or Linux  |
| outputformat | The output format, print or online      |
| revision     | The revision, 3.4 or 4.0.               |
| security     | The security, secret or top-secret      |
| userlevel    | The user level, novice or expert        |
| vendor       | The vendor, Acme or Yoyodyne            |
| wordsize     | The word size, 32 or 64 bit             |

## 2. Using the stylesheets

In addition, the stylesheets support profiling on several common attributes that are not explicitly for effectivity: `xml:lang`, `revisionflag`, and `role`.

### Note



DocBook places no constraints on the values used for effectivity and the stylesheets don't either. You're free to use "cat" and "dog" as effectivity values in the `wordsize` attribute, if you wish. The further you deviate from the nominal meaning, the more important it is to document your system!

Consider *Example 2.7.1.1, A contrived effectivity example*.

```
<para>This is an utterly contrived example of
some common text. Options are introduced with the
<phrase os="windows">/</phrase>
<phrase os="mac;linux">-</phrase> character.</para>
```

### Example 2.7.1.1 A contrived effectivity example

If this document is formatted with the `$profile-os` parameter set to "windows", it will produce:

This is an utterly contrived example of some common text. Options are introduced with the / character.

If "mac" or "linux" is specified, it will produce:

This is an utterly contrived example of some common text. Options are introduced with the - character.

### Important



If the document is formatted without any profiling, *all* of the versions will be included:

This is an utterly contrived example of some common text.  
Options are introduced with the / - character.

That is unlikely to work well.



## 2.7.2 Profiling

The profiling parameters are applied to every document: `$profile-arch` , `$profile-audience` , `$profile-condition` , `$profile-conformance` , `$profile-lang` , `$profile-os` , `$profile-outputformat` , `$profile-revision` , `$profile-revisionflag` , `$profile-role` , `$profile-security` , `$profile-userlevel` , `$profile-vendor` , and `$profile-wordsizes` . Each of these values is treated as a string and broken into tokens at the `$profile-separator` .

For every element in the source document:

- If it specifies a value for an effectivity attribute, the value is split into tokens at the `$profile-separator` .
- If the corresponding profile parameter is not empty, then the element is discarded unless at least one of the tokens in the profile parameter list is also in the effectivity list.

In practice, elements that don't specify effectivity are always included and profile parameters that are empty don't exclude any elements.

## 2.7.3 Dynamic profiling

Dynamic profiling is a feature that allows you to profile the output of the stylesheets according to the runtime values of stylesheet parameters. You can, for example, produce different output depending on whether or not chunking is enabled or JavaScript is being used for annotations.

To enable dynamic profiling, set the `$dynamic-profiles` parameter to “true”.

In the interest of performance, security, and legibility, dynamic profiles don't support arbitrary expressions. You can use a variable name by itself, `$flag` , which tests if that variable is true, or you can use a simple comparison, `$var=value` which tests if (the string value of) `$var` has the value `value` . (If `$var` is a list, it's an existential test.) You also can't use boolean operators or any other fancy expressions.

If you really need to have a dynamic profile based on some arbitrary condition, you can do it by making a customization layer that stores that computation in a variable and then testing that variable in your dynamic profile.

### Backwards incompatibility

This is slightly backwards incompatible in that profile values that begin with a dollar sign are now interpreted differently. This is only true if dynamic profiling is enabled.

An element with dynamic profiling will be published if none of its profile expressions evaluate to false. This is slightly different from the ordinary profiling semantic which publishes the element if any of its values match.

## 2.8 Syntax highlighting

Program listings and other verbatim environments can be “syntax highlighted”, that is, the significant tokens in the listing can be colored differently (keywords in red, quoted strings in blue, that sort of thing).

The default syntax highlighter is *Pygments*, an external Python program. This has the advantage that the highlighted listing is available to the stylesheets. The stylesheets can then render line numbers, call outs, and other features.

But running an external program for every verbatim environment requires *having* the external program and also, if there are many verbatim environments, may slow down the formatting process

An alternative is to use a JavaScript highlighter in the browser such as *highlight.js* or *Prism*. This approach has no impact on formatting and doesn’t require an external process. However, it means the *xslTNG Stylesheets* have no control over the process. Most of the verbatim options only apply when *Pygments* is used.

The choice of syntax highlighter is determined by the `$verbatim-syntax-highlighter` parameter.

## 2.9 Print output (dead tree editions)

Formatters, the tools that turn markup of any sort into aesthetically pleasing (or even passably acceptable) printed pages are fiendishly difficult to write.

In the XML space, there have been a number of standards and vendor-specific solutions to this problem. The current standards are *XSL FO* and *CSS*.

At present, the *DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets* are focused on *CSS* for print output. There’s a customization layer that produces “paged-media-ready” HTML that can be processed with a *CSS* formatter such as *AntennaHouse* or *Prince*.

To get print output, format your documents with the `print.xsl` stylesheet instead of the `docbook.xsl` stylesheet. The additional cleanup provided by `print.xsl` assures that footnotes, annotations, and other elements will appear in the right place, and with reasonable presentation, in the printed version.

The resulting HTML document can be formatted directly with a *CSS* paged-media formatter.

## 3. Customizing the stylesheets

In many circumstances, the stylesheets can be used “out of the box” without any customization. But sometimes you may need to change the formatting of certain elements. One common reason is to change the formatting of title pages or navigational features. In other cases, it may be to support local extensions to DocBook or simply to change the markup to support a particular use case.

Three approaches are possible, with increasing degrees of effort: changing stylesheet parameters, creating your own customization layer, or making broader changes to the stylesheet’s implementation.

The subject of broader implementation changes is the subject of *Chapter 4, Implementation details*. In this chapter, we’ll look at the easier options.

### 3.1 Changing stylesheet parameters

The *DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets* define a lot of parameters. They are all described in *Reference I, Parameter reference*. If the change you want to make has already been parameterized, you may be able to achieve your goal simply by setting a parameter at runtime.

For example, if you want to change the formatting of dates and times in `date` elements, you can simply change the date and time formatting (`p_date-date-format`) parameters. Similarly, if you want to change the numeration style of ordered lists, you can simply change the ordered list item numeration parameter.

These changes can be accomplished by simply passing the new values to the processor, on the command line or in a configuration file, for example. You do not have to write any XSLT to make these changes.

Parameter values apply to the entire document processed by the stylesheets. In some cases, you may wish to change the presentation of just one or small number of elements. This can often be accomplished with a db processing instruction (`pi_db`) in the source document itself. These customizations can also be accomplished without writing any XSLT.

If you want to make a change that isn’t supported by a parameter, or an ad hoc exception that doesn’t have a supporting processing instruction, you will have to write a customization layer. (You are invited to submit an issue with your use case if you think it would be of general interest.)

You may also find it convenient to write a customization layer if you want to change several parameters and you find it inconvenient to pass them all to the processor on every invocation.

## 3.2 Creating a customization layer

A customization layer is simply an XSLT stylesheet that you write which extends the DocBook stylesheets. The simplest<sup>1</sup> customization layer is:

```
1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
  <xsl:stylesheet
    xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:db="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"
5    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    exclude-result-prefixes="db xs"
    version="3.0">

10    <!-- This href has to point to your local copy
       of the stylesheets. -->
    <xsl:import href="docbook/xslt/docbook.xsl"/>

  </xsl:stylesheet>
```

This customization doesn't do anything. But you can, for example, redefine parameters if you wish:

```
1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
  <xsl:stylesheet
    xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:db="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"
5    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
```

---

<sup>1</sup> Ok, technically, this stylesheet has a couple of namespace references that aren't strictly necessary so it could be a teeny bit simpler, but you'll need those declarations (and more!) if you want to do anything useful.

### 3.2 Creating a customization layer

```
exclude-result-prefixes="db xs"
version="3.0">

10 <xsl:import href="docbook/xslt/docbook.xsl"/>

<xsl:param name="orderedlist-item-numeration"
select="1"/>

15 <xsl:param name="date-dateTime-format"
select="[D01] [MNn,*-3] [Y0001]
at [H01]:[m01]"/>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

This will have the effect of running the DocBook stylesheets with those two parameters set as specified.

If you want to change the HTML output for an element, you can write a template for that element in your customization layer. Consider this DocBook document:

```
1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<article xmlns="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"
version="5.1">
<info>
5 <title>Sample Document</title>
<date>2020-07-05</date>
</info>

<para>This is a sample <productname>DocBook</productname>
10 document.</para>

</article>
```

Suppose that you decided you wanted to have the `productname` element link automatically to the vendor webpage.

### 3. Customizing the stylesheets

#### Important



The *DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets* process *all* DocBook elements in the `m:docbook` mode. This is different from previous XSLT stylesheets for DocBook which simply used the default mode.

You must either specify a default mode in your customization layer or remember to specify the mode on match templates and template applications. If you forget the mode, you'll get unexpected results!

One way to do that would be to redefine the template that processes the `productname` element:

```
1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
  <xsl:stylesheet
    xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:db="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"
    5    xmlns:m="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes" ①
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    exclude-result-prefixes="db m xs" ②
    version="3.0">
10
    <xsl:import href="docbook/xslt/docbook.xsl"/>

    <xsl:param name="orderedlist-item-numeration"
      select="'1'"/>
15

    <xsl:param name="date-dateTime-format"
      select="'[D01] [MNn,*-3] [Y0001]
        at [H01]:[m01]'" />

20 <xsl:template match="db:productname"
      mode="m:docbook"> ③
    <xsl:variable name="name"
```

```

        select="normalize-space(.)"/>
    ④
25 <xsl:variable name="url" as="xs:string?">
    <xsl:choose>
        <xsl:when test="$name='DocBook'">
            <xsl:sequence select="'https://docbook.org/'"/>
        </xsl:when>
30 <xsl:when test="$name='DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets'">
            <xsl:sequence select="'https://xsltn.docbook.org/'"/>
        </xsl:when>
        <xsl:when test="$name='Wikipedia'">
            <xsl:sequence select="'https://wikipedia.org/'"/>
35 </xsl:when>
        <xsl:otherwise>
            <!-- Unrecognized -->
        </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
40 </xsl:variable>

    <xsl:choose>
        <xsl:when test="empty($url)">
            <xsl:next-match/> ⑤
45 </xsl:when>
        <xsl:otherwise>
            <a href="{ $url}" title="Home page">
                <xsl:next-match/> ⑤
            </a>
50 </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>

```

### 3. Customizing the stylesheets

- ① All of the DocBook elements are processed in the “`m:docbook`” mode.
- ② Remember to exclude all the namespaces you declare so that they don’t wind up scattered about in your HTML.
- ③ I repeat, all of the DocBook elements are processed in the “`m:docbook`” mode. I expect failure to declare this mode is going to be a common error.
- ④ Yes, this whole listing is rather cramped. I’m trying to make it all narrow enough to fit in the display without overflowing the margins.
- ⑤ Calling `xsl:next-match` invokes the underlying processing. The effect of this template is to wrap an HTML “`a`” around the default processing for `productname`.

It’s worth pointing out that if the tag has an `xlink:href` attribute, that will generate an HTML `a` as well. A more robust stylesheet would check for that, but I’m trying to keep the example simple.

## 3.3 Managing CSS stylesheets

The HTML that the *DocBook xsl/TNG* stylesheet produce is intended to be clean, robust markup for styling with CSS. Exactly how you control which stylesheet links are produced has changed several times. The current scheme is this:

1. If syntax highlighting is enabled, a link to the `$verbatim-syntax-highlight-css` stylesheet is included.
2. If `$oxy-markup-css` is true and there is at least one processing instruction in the document that has a name that begins with `oxy_`, a link to the `$oxy-markup-css` stylesheet is included.
3. If `$persistent-toc` is true a link to the `$persistent-toc-css` stylesheet is included.
4. If `$use-docbook-css` is true, links to the standard DocBook stylesheets are included. Those stylesheets are `docbook.css` (for all media), `docbook-screen.css` (for screen media), and `docbook-page-setup.css` and `docbook-paged.css` (for print media).
5. The DocBook element that is the context element when the HTML `head` is being generated is processed in the `m:html-head-links` mode. By default, that template does nothing, but you can change that in a customization layer.
6. If any CSS stylesheets are defined in `$user-css-links`, they are included.



### 3.4 Creating something completely different

7. The DocBook element that is the context element when the HTML `head` is being generated is processed in the `m:html-head-last` mode. By default, that template does nothing, but you can change that in a customization layer.

## 3.4 Creating something completely different

Your input documents go through several pre-processing steps before they are rendered into HTML. If you want to produce completely different outputs, the place to start is with root template in the `m:docbook` mode.

Consider, for example (<https://github.com/docbook/xslTNG/issues/84>), the task of creating a JSON version of the Table of Contents. In principle, you could write your own stylesheet to do this, but leveraging the *DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets* means you can make use of functions like `f:generate-id()` to create links.

To produce completely different results, override the root template in the `m:docbook` mode:

```
1 <xsl:template match="/" mode="m:docbook">
  <xsl:document>
    <!-- your processing here -->
  </xsl:document>
5 </xsl:template>
```

This template *must* return a document node.

Note that you can mix-and-match your processing with default processing by processing DocBook elements in the `m:docbook` mode.

Here is a simple example of a stylesheet that produces a JSON version of the Table of Contents for a DocBook document:

```
1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
  <xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:db="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"
    xmlns:f="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions"
5    xmlns:m="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes"
    xmlns:t="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    exclude-result-prefixes="db f m t xs">
```

### 3. Customizing the stylesheets

```
10      version="3.0">

    <!-- This href has to point to your local copy
         of the stylesheets. -->
    <xsl:import href="docbook/xslt/docbook.xsl"/>

15    <xsl:output method="text"/>

    <!-- Suppress xslTNG's default HTML output; note that this template
         must return a document node. -->

20    <xsl:template match="/" mode="m:docbook">
      <xsl:document>
        <xsl:apply-templates select="." mode="TOC"/>
      </xsl:document>
    </xsl:template>

25    <!-- The templates below generate a simple JSON ToC. -->

    <xsl:template match="/" mode="TOC">
      {"toc": [
30    <xsl:apply-templates mode="TOC"/>
      ]}
    </xsl:template>

    <xsl:template match="db:part|db:article|db:section|db:chapter" mode="TOC"
35      expand-text="yes">
      <xsl:if test="preceding-sibling::db:part
        | preceding-sibling::db:article
        | preceding-sibling::db:section
        | preceding-sibling::db:chapter">,&#10;</xsl:if>
40    {{
      "ref": "{f:generate-id(.)}",
      "title": "{normalize-space(db:info/db:title)}",
```

### 3.4 Creating something completely different

```
45  "subtitle": "{normalize-space(db:info/db:subtitle))}",
    "items": [
      <xsl:apply-templates select="db:part|db:article|db:section|db:chapter" mode="TOC"
    ]
    }}
  </xsl:template>

50  <xsl:template match="*" mode="TOC">
    <xsl:apply-templates select="*" mode="TOC"/>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

#### Note



This example is meant as a starting point; it's not robust as it only handles a few of the possible elements that might appear in a Table of Contents.

When processing documents this way, be aware that you are transforming the pre-processed, normalized versions of your input documents. For example, whether or not you put `info` wrappers around the titles of your sections, in the pre-processed input, `title`s *always* appear inside `info` wrappers. This normalization greatly simplifies processing in many places.



# 4. Implementation details

This section sketches out some features of the implementation. It would probably be better to build an annotated Definitive Guide (<https://tdg.docbook.org/>) or something, but this will have to do for now.

## 4.1 Customizing chunking

Chunking is controlled by the `$chunk-include` and `$chunk-exclude` parameters. These parameters are both strings that must contain an XPath expression.

For each node in the document, the `$chunk-include` parameter is evaluated. If it does not return an empty sequence, the element is considered a chunking candidate. In this case, the `$chunk-exclude` parameter is evaluated. If the exclude expression *does* return an empty sequence, then the element identified becomes a chunk. (If the exclude expression returns a non-empty value, the element will not become a chunk.)

## 4.2 Lengths and units

Lengths appear in the context of images (width and height) and tables (column widths). Several different units of length are possible: absolute lengths (e.g., 3in), relative lengths (e.g., 3\*), and percentages (e.g., 25%). In some contexts, these can be combined: a column width of “3\*+0.5in” should have a width equal to 3 times the relative width plus ½ inch.

In practice, some of the more complicated forms in *TR 9502:1995* have no direct mapping to the units available in HTML and CSS. The stylesheets attempt to specify a mapping that’s close. Broadly, they take the nominal width of the table ( `$nominal-page-width` ), subtract out the fixed widths, divide up the remaining widths proportionally among the relative widths, and compute final widths. The final widths can be expressed either in absolute terms or as percentages.

In handling the width and height of images, the intrinsic width and height of the image in pixels are converted into lengths by dividing by `$pixels-per-inch`. Nominal widths are taken into consideration if necessary.

### Note



Determining the intrinsic size of an image depends on an extension function. See *Section 2.5, Extension functions*. Many bitmap image formats are supported. The bounding box of EPS images is used, if it's present. The intrinsic size of SVG images is not available.

The list of recognized units (in, cm, etc.) are taken from `$v:unit-scale`.

## 4.3 Verbatim styles

There are three verbatim styles: `lines`, `plain`, and `raw`.

### `lines`

In the `lines` style, each line of the verbatim environment is marked up individually. In this style, lines can be numbered and callouts can be inserted.

### `plain`

In the `plain` style, callouts can be inserted, but additional markup is not added (except for the callouts). Consequently, it isn't possible to do line numbering or syntax highlighting. (It may be possible to provide these features with JavaScript libraries in the browser, however.)

### `raw`

In the `raw` style, no changes are made to the verbatim content. It's output as it appears. Inline markup that it contains, `emphasis` or other elements, will be processed, but you cannot add line numbers, callouts, or syntax highlighting.

Consult *Reference I, Parameter reference* for a variety of parameters that control aspects of verbatim processing.

## 4.4 Mediaobject URIs

Media object (images, video, audio) URIs are tricky to handle. It's most convenient if the URIs in the source documents point to the actual media files. This allows extensions, like the image properties extension function, to access the files. At the same time, the references generated in the HTML have to point to the locations where they will be published.

The stylesheets attempt to handle this by using `$mediaobject-input-base-uri` to locate the files from the XML sources and `$mediaobject-output-base-uri` to create the HTML links.

If you need a completely different organization of images in the input and output, you may need to define your own `f:resolve-object-uri()` function.

## 4.5 Templates

It's difficult to make title pages for documents easy to customize. There is *a lot* of variation between documents and the styles can have very precise design constraints. At the end of the day, if you need complete control, you can define a template that matches the element in the `m:generate-titlepage` mode and generate all of the markup you wish.

The default title page handling attempts to make some declarative customization possible by using templates. A typical header template looks like this:

```

1  <db:section>
    <header>
      <tmp:apply-templates select="db:title">
        <h2><tmp:content/></h2>
5   </tmp:apply-templates>
      <tmp:apply-templates select="db:subtitle">
        <h3><tmp:content/></h3>
      </tmp:apply-templates>
    </header>
10 </db:section>
```

Any HTML element in the template will be copied to the output. The semantics of a “template apply templates” element (`tmp:apply-templates`) is that it runs the ordinary `xsl:apply-templates` instruction on the elements that match its `select` expression. If the result is the empty sequence (e.g., if there is no `subtitle`), nothing is output. If there is a result, the content of the `tmp:apply-templates` element is processed. Anywhere that `tmp:content` appears, the result of applying templates will be output.

In this example, if the title is “H<sub>2</sub>O” and there is no subtitle, the resulting HTML title page will be:

```

<header>
  <h2>H<sub>2</sub>O</h2>
</header>
```

## 4.6 Annotations

The stylesheets fully support annotations, including a number of presentation styles enabled by JavaScript in the browser. They also support an extension of the documented semantics of `annotation`.

Annotations are applied to elements with links. Either the element must point to its annotations (with an `annotations` attribute) or the annotations must point to the elements they annotate (with an `annotates` attribute). These are documented as ID/IDREF links but they are not `IDREFS` attributes because annotations may be stored separately.

Starting in version 1.5.1, the *DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets*<sup>1</sup> support a non-standard extension: if you place the string `xpath:` in the `annotates` attribute of an `annotation`, then the rest of the attribute is assumed to contain an XPath expression that points to the element(s) to which the annotation applies. (If you want to put IDREF values before the `xpath:` token, that's fine, but you can't put them after; the expression continues to the end of the attribute value.)

Suppose, for example, that you wanted to annotate the stylesheet title in the previous paragraph. The standard mechanisms would require that you either put an `xml:id` attribute on the element or point to the annotation from the element. With the XPath extension, you can do this:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 | <code>&lt;annotation</code>   |
|   | <code>    annotates="xpath:preceding-sibling::db:para/db:citetitle"</code>    |
|   | <code>    xmlns:db="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"&gt;</code>                 |
|   | <code>    &lt;para&gt;This annotation applies to the stylesheet title.</code> |
| 5 | <code>For a discussion of this annotation, see the</code>                     |
|   | <code>following paragraphs.&lt;/para&gt;</code>                               |
|   | <code>&lt;/annotation&gt;</code>  |

When the XPath expression is evaluated, the `annotation` element is the context item. Often, this means that you'll want to start the expression with `id()` or `/`.

The namespace context for the expression is also the `annotation` element, that's why I've added the DocBook namespace binding for the `db` prefix. In practice, if you're doing this on several annotations, you can just put all the namespace bindings on a common ancestor. All of the bindings *in scope* on the `annotation` element are available in the expression.

Caveats:

---

<sup>1</sup> *This annotation applies to the stylesheet title. For a discussion of this annotation, see the following paragraphs.*



## 4.6 Annotations

1. There's no way to have multiple XPath expressions. You can't put "`xpath:`" in there twice. If you want an annotation to apply to multiple elements, you'll have to construct a single expression that selects all the elements, or duplicate the annotation, or use ID/IDREF links.

If this turns out to be a serious limitation in practice, additional syntax could be added to support multiple expressions, but it doesn't *seem* necessary.

2. You can only select elements. There's no way to select the third word in a particular paragraph, for example, unless it already has some markup around it. There's also no way to select a comment or a processing instruction.

The placement of the annotation marker ("`⌘`" by default) can also be controlled globally and on individual annotations. The `$annotation-placement` parameter provides global control. To specify the position for an individual annotation, put the token "`before`" or "`after`" in the `role` attribute on the `annotation`.



# 5. Building the stylesheets

If you wish, you can also clone the distribution and build them yourself. The distribution is designed to be self contained. In a Unix or Mac environment, running:

```
./gradlew dist
```

will build the stylesheets. Building will:

1. Compile the stylesheets and run the unit tests. The compiled stylesheets will be available in `build/xslt`.

Running all the tests requires building the reference guide and a few other things. You can build the stylesheets without running any of the tests with the `makeXslt` task.

2. Compile the extension functions. The compiled extension functions will be available in `build/libs`. The `jar` task will compile the extensions without running the tests.
3. “Compile” the Python script (python-script) that helps run the stylesheets. (It’s not really compiled, but several stylesheet-version-specific strings are interpolated.) The `copyBin` task will setup the Python script without running the tests.

## Important



In principle, it should be possible to build the stylesheets on Windows™. In practice, it doesn’t work. One would imagine that mapping path (“:”→“;”) and filename (“\”→“/”) separators and constructing URIs for paths (“C:\Users\...” →“file:///C:/Users/...””) would make it work. In the author’s experience, that is not the case. Pull requests are welcome. It may be more expedient to build in the Linux subsystem on Windows 10 or in a Docker container.

## 5.1 Prerequisites

In order to build the stylesheets, you must configure your system with several prerequisites:

- Gradle (<https://gradle.org/>). The stylesheet builds use the Gradle wrapper ([https://docs.gradle.org/current/userguide/gradle\\_wrapper.html](https://docs.gradle.org/current/userguide/gradle_wrapper.html)) to assure a consistent environment across systems, it’ll be downloaded automatically the first time you build.

## 5. Building the stylesheets

- A modern version of Java. (Java 1.8 or later, for example.)
- Python (<https://www.python.org/>) 3 and the click (<https://click.palletsprojects.com/en/7.x/>) module. The Pygmentize (<https://pygments.org/>) program is also required for syntax highlighting, though that's not technically a build requirement.

If you discover other prerequisites that have been overlooked, or have questions or suggestions about how best to manage them, please let us know.

## 5.2 Repository structure

The most significant parts of the repository hierarchy are:

```
src/main/xslt
src/main/xslt/transforms
src/main/xslt/modules
```

These are the sources for the stylesheets themselves. The `transform` subdirectory contains the preprocessing stylesheets that are run as separate transforms. The `modules` directory doesn't have any special significance, it just makes the main entry points easier to find.

You cannot run the XSLT stylesheets directly from the source location. You must build them first with the `makeXslt` build target.

```
src/main/web
src/main/web/resources/css
src/main/web/resources/js
```

These are the CSS and JavaScript files needed for accurate rendering in the browser or formatter process.

```
src/main/locales/locale-10
src/main/locales/locale
```

The `local-10` directory holds copies of the localization files from the XSLT 1.0 stylesheets. They're transformed into the `locale` versions by the build system. This whole area is one that needs work.

```
src/test/xspec
src/test/generators
src/test/resources/xml
```

## 5.2 Repository structure

### src/test/resources/expected

These are the testing resources. You cannot run the XSpec tests directly from `src/test/xspec`. The build system copies them into `build/xspec` along with a few XSpec tests generated automatically by the stylesheets in `generators`.

The library of DocBook documents that are used for testing is stored in the `xml` directory. The HTML files in `expected` correspond to the expected results. The expected results aren't usefully viewed in a browser. Only the `body` element and its descendants are stored in the expected results. This avoids a lot of noise in the `head`.

### src/main/java

These are the sources for the extension functions.

### src/guide

### src/website

These are the sources, resources, and ancillary files for the reference guide and the website.

### tools

The `tools` directory holds a number of stylesheets and other scripts used by the build process.

### lib

The `lib` directory holds third party jar files. This is also where you can put your Saxon PE or EE files if you have them.

### build

### build/actual

### build/xslt

The build system puts all of its temporary files under `build`. It's always safe to delete the entire directory and start over, though it will require internet access and it may take a while.

Test files that you format are published to `build/actual` and the images, CSS, and JavaScript resources are copied under there so that everything will look right in the browser. For security reasons, some JavaScript features may not work if you are looking at the documents from the filesystem. You can work around this by pointing a local web server at the build directory.

The built stylesheets are in `build/xslt`. You can run them directly from there.

## 5.3 Build tasks

The build system is *Gradle*. Gradle’s processing model operates in several phases, this allows an initial configuration phase to construct build targets (called tasks) dynamically. The *DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets* build script uses this facility quite a bit.

In the discussion that follows, *testdoc* is the base name of a test document, that is, one of the example files from the `src/test/resources/xml` directory. For example, one of the test documents is `src/test/resources/xml/article.001.xml`. In the build targets that would be the “testdoc” `article.001`. In an analogous way, “testset” is the root name of an XSpec test file in `src/test/xspec`.

The most important tasks are:

`makeXslt`

This task “compiles” the stylesheets into `build/xslt`.

`report`

This task runs all of the tests and generates a unified report in `build/report`. This is the default task.

`test`

Runs the test suite against the stylesheets.

`testdoc.html`

Formats *testdoc* into HTML and stores the result in `build/actual` where it can be viewed in the browser with the appropriate CSS, JavaScript, images, etc.

`testdoc.expected`

Formats *testdoc* into HTML and stores the result in `src/test/resources/expected`. You should *only* run this task when you’ve made a change and determined that the new results are correct and should replace the previously expected results.

`testdoc.pdf.html`

Formats *testdoc* into HTML suitable for paged media and stores the result in `build/actual`.

`testdoc.pdf`

The `.pdf` target will generate the `.pdf.html` output and then attempt to transform it into PDF with either AntennaHouse or PrinceXML. Additional configuration may be necessary to get this to work.

## 5.3 Build tasks

### `testdoc.chunk`

Formats *testdoc* into HTML with chunking turned on. The result is stored in `index.html` and other files in `build/actual`. No attempt is made to avoid having the output files from different documents overwrite each other. At the moment, none of the automated tests create chunked output.

### `testset.xspec`

Runs the *testset* set of XSpec tests. These don't all work reliably because of different parameter settings. But it can be useful for quick testing of a particular set of features.

### `jar`

Compiles the extension functions and creates the jar file in `build/libs`.

### `dist`

Builds an archive in `build/distributions` suitable for distribution.

### `guide`

Builds the reference guide.

### `website`

Builds the website.

### `explorer`

Generates the XSLT Explorer (<https://xslt.xmlexplorer.com/>) report for the stylesheets in `build/explorer`.

### `tagnameTest`

The build file constructs tests for different tag types. For example, to run all the XSpec tests that involve “`revhistory`”, you can use the target `revhistoryTest`. In practice, this feature is little used and may not be wholly up-to-date with respect to the most recent tests.

### `helloWorld`

A smoke test target. It just prints a message, but doing so will exercise a bunch of the build machinery in Gradle.

## 5.4 Running XSpec

In order to get consistent results across different runs and in different environments, the XSpec tests run a driver stylesheet, `xspec-driver.xsl`.

Note also that the XSpec shell script is modified by the stylesheets.



## Part II. Reference



# I. Parameter reference

# \$additional-languages

Additional localization languages (beyond the default language)

|             |                         |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }additional-languages |
| Defined in: | modules/gentext.xsl     |
| Used in:    | modules/gentext.xsl     |

## Synopsis

\$additional-languages := ()

## Description

If the stylesheets need to generate text (the names of labels such as “Chapter”, for example), they attempt to do so in the same language as the document. This is determined by finding the nearest in-scope `xml:lang` attribute from the context where the generated text is required.

The stylesheets can generate text in more than 70 languages, but very few documents use more than a few. To avoid the overhead of loading a great many localizations that will never be used, the stylesheets don’t load them all.

The stylesheets always load the `$default-language` and will load any additional languages identified in `$additional-languages`, a space separated list of language identifiers.

If the `$additional-languages` is the empty sequence, the stylesheets attempt to determine which languages are used in the document and load the appropriate localizations.

# \$align-char-default, \$align-char-pad, \$align-char-width

Support “char” alignment on CALS table cells.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }align-char-default</code>        |
|             | <code>{ }align-char-pad</code>            |
|             | <code>{ }align-char-width</code>          |
| Defined in: | param.xsl (3)                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/tablecals.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$align-char-default as xs:string := ' '`

`$align-char-width := 2`

`$align-char-pad := ' '`

## Description

CALS tables support “char” alignment on columns. The most common use case for character alignment is to align a column of numbers on a decimal point even when the number of characters to right or left of the decimal point varies.

Three parameters apply to character alignment:

`$align-char-default`

Specifies the default alignment character.

`$align-char-pad`

Specifies the default padding character.

`$align-char-width`

Specifies the number of characters that follow the alignment character.

## Notes



1. The HTML table model doesn't really support character alignment. This feature pads each entry on the right as necessary to put the alignment character in the same place. Naturally, this will only produce the desired result if a monospace font is used in the cell.
2. If the alignment character appears more than once in the cell, the cells are aligned around the last occurrence. The notion of "last" and padding on the right or the left should be sensitive to the writing direction, but it isn't currently.
3. Character alignment is ignored if a cell contains markup.

*Example 1.1, An example of char alignment* shows an example of character alignment on the “,” character.

```
<informaltable frame="all">
  <tgroup cols="2" colsep="1" rowsep="1">
    <colspec colnum="2" align="char" char=","/>
    <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry>Row A</entry>
        <entry>10000,01</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>Row B</entry>
        <entry>10</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>Row C</entry>
        <entry>-3,14</entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
```

</informaltable>

### Example 1.1 An example of char alignment

Table rendering:

|       |          |
|-------|----------|
| Row A | 10000,01 |
| Row B | 10       |
| Row C | -3,14    |

The alignment character can be specified on a per-column, per-table basis with the `char` attribute on `colspec`.

The alignment width and padding character can be specified on a per-column, per-table basis with a `db` processing instruction.

If the settings apply to the whole table, the processing instruction can be a child of `tgrou`, preceding any other elements. If you want to specify different values for different columns, the processing instruction must immediately follow the `colspec` for the column.

The `align-char-width` pseudo-attribute controls the number of characters following the alignment character. The `align-char-pad` pseudo-attribute controls the character used for padding.

A value that does not contain the alignment character is assumed to be followed immediately by the alignment character. (In other words, if you're aligning on ".", "10" is considered to be "10".) If the pad character is a space<sup>1</sup>, then the pad character will be used to pad the value. If the pad character isn't a space, the value will be padded with the alignment character followed by pad characters as necessary.

---

<sup>1</sup> Technically, is in the class of Unicode characters considered to be spaces, one that matches `\p{Zs}`.

# \$allow-eval

Process the `eval` processing instruction?

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { <code>allow-eval</code> }     |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xsl</code>          |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xsl</code> |

## Synopsis

`$allow-eval as xs:string := 'false'`

## Description

If this parameter is true, XPath expressions contained in the `eval` processing instruction will be evaluated, otherwise the processing instruction is silently ignored.

If the eval is performed, the result of the evaluation is inserted into the formatted document.



# \$annotate-toc

Annotate the table-of-contents?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }annotate-toc</code>                                   |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>   |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/toc.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

`$annotate-toc := 'true'`

## Description

If true, a table of contents containing `refentry` elements will also include the `refpurpose` for each entry.

# \$annotation-collection

An external collection of annotations.

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }annotation-collection        |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                       |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, drivers.xsl |
| Used by:    | t:preprocess                    |

## Synopsis

\$annotation-collection as xs:string := "

## Description

Because annotations can be applied by pointing from the annotation to the element they annotate, they can be stored and managed externally. If `$annotation-collection` points to a collection of annotations, the stylesheets will add them to the document before it is processed.

To achieve this:

1. Create a collection of shared annotations and store them somewhere. The stylesheets will copy only the top-level `annotation` elements (`/*annotation`). The document element doesn't matter.
2. Use the `annotates` attribute on the annotations to point at elements in the document you're transforming.

Annotations can point in either direction, but you will get ID/IDREF validation errors if you attempt to point from the document into the annotation collection because the annotation collection won't be present when you validate. If your use case requires pointing in that direction, you will have better luck with a pipeline that combines the two documents before validating.

3. Run your transformation with `$annotation-collection` set to the URI of the document that contains your collection of annotations.

The stylesheets will apply annotations to the elements identified. Extra annotations, annotations that don't point to elements that actually exist in the document being transformed, will be ignored.

# \$annotation-mark

Identifying mark for annotations.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }annotation-mark                          |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                   |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/annotations.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="annotation-mark">  
  <sup>⌘</sup>  
</xsl:param>
```

## Description

When `annotation` s are rendered, the `$annotation-mark` is inserted at each location where an annotation occurs.

If JavaScript is used for annotations (see `$annotation-style` ), clicking on the mark will bring up the annotation; if JavaScript is not used, the marks are numbered and the annotations appear as a form of footnote.

# \$annotation-placement

Determines where the annotation mark is placed.

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }annotation-placement         |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                       |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, drivers.xsl |
| Used by:    | t:preprocess                    |

## Synopsis

\$annotation-placement := 'after'

## Description

When `annotation` s are rendered, `$annotation-placement` determines where the `$annotation-mark` is placed. If the value is `after` , the mark or marks are placed at the very end of the element being annotated. If the value is `before` , the marks are placed at the very beginning of the element being annotated.

Each individual annotation can determine its placement by placing `before` or `after` in its `role` attribute.

# \$annotation-style

Selects the annotation style.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }annotation-style                           |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                     |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$annotation-style := 'javascript'
```

## Description

An `annotation` can be used to add annotations to arbitrary elements. Annotations are formatted something like footnotes, they appear at the bottom of the page and are linked from the point of the annotation. There are two annotation styles, “`javascript`” and “`inline`”.

If the annotation style is “`javascript`”, a script reference will be added. The script hides the annotations at the bottom of the page and instead renders them as modal dialogs when the marks are clicked. The presentation is accessible in the absence of JavaScript.

If the annotation style is “`inline`”, then the script is not included and the default presentation is used. No other values are supported at this time.

# \$annotations-js

Script to support popup (JavaScript) annotations.

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }annotations-js            |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                    |
| Used in:    | main.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$annotations-js := 'js/annotations.js'`

## Description

If popup (JavaScript) annotations appear in the document, a link to this script will be added to the document. This script must contain the JavaScript necessary to support the popup annotations feature.

# \$bibliography-collection

An external collection of bibliography entries.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }bibliography-collection</code>                    |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xsl</code>                                     |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xsl</code> , <code>drivers.xsl</code> |
| Used by:    | <code>t:preprocess</code>                                  |

## Synopsis

`$bibliography-collection as xs:string := "`

## Description

It's often convenient to share a common bibliography across many documents. If `$bibliography-collection` points to a bibliography, the stylesheets will automatically populate bibliography entries in the document being transformed.

To achieve this:

1. Create a shared bibliography and store it somewhere. Make sure that each entry in your shared bibliography has a unique `xml:id` value.
2. Run your transformation with `$bibliography-collection` set to the URI of that document.
3. In the document you're transforming, refer to the shared entries with completely empty `biblioentry` or `bibliomixed` elements that have the same `xml:id` as an entry in the shared bibliography.

The stylesheets will copy those entries into your document before processing it.

# \$callout-default-column

Default column for callouts.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }callout-default-column                |
| Defined in: | param.xml                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/verbatim.xml |

## Synopsis

```
$callout-default-column := 60
```

## Description

When callouts are used in program listings (or screens), if the column is not specified for a callout, it will appear in this column.



# \$callout-unicode-start

Initial callout character.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }callout-unicode-start  |
| Defined in: | param.xml   |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/programming.xml, modules/verbatim.xml |

## Synopsis

`$callout-unicode-start := 9311`

## Description

When callouts are rendered, for example in `programlistingco`, this is the beginning of the range of characters to be used for callout “bugs”. This is the decimal value of the Unicode code point that is the “zero” point in the list, the one just before the first character.

The default value is 9311 which means the first callout will be 9312, U2460, “①”.

# \$chunk

Produce chunked output?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }chunk   |
| Defined in: | param.xsl  |
| Used in:    | main.xsl, param.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl, modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:chunk  |

## Synopsis

\$chunk as xs:string? := ()

## Description

Specifying any value for this parameter turns on “chunking”, see *Section 2.6, “Chunked” output*. The value of the parameter is taken as the filename for the root chunk, unless some other mechanism identifies an alternate value.

# \$chunk-exclude

XPath expressions for excluding chunks.

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }chunk-exclude                      |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/chunk.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$chunk-exclude as xs:string\*

## Description

This parameter is only relevant when chunking is being performed, see *Section 2.6*, “*Chunked*” output. This parameter contains a list of XPath expressions. When chunking is being applied, for any element that could be a chunk (see `$chunk-include`), each expression is evaluated with that element as the context item. If the effective boolean value of any expression is true, the element will not become a chunk.

The default value for this parameter is:

```
('self::db:partintro',  
'self::*[ancestor::db:partintro]',  
'self::db:toc')
```

In other words `partintro`, all of the descendants of `partintro`, and `toc` are explicitly excluded from being chunks.

The namespaces in `$chunk-filter-namespaces` will be in-scope when this expression is evaluated.

# \$chunk-include

XPath expressions for identifying potential chunks.

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }chunk-include                      |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/chunk.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$chunk-include as xs:string\*

## Description

This parameter is only relevant when chunking is being performed, see *Section 2.6, “Chunked” output*. This parameter contains a list of XPath expressions. When chunking is being applied, for every element in the document, each expression is evaluated with that element as the context item. If the effective boolean value of any expression is true, the element is a candidate for chunking. It will become a chunk unless `$chunk-exclude` excludes it or, in the special case of recursive sections, if it is nested too deeply.

The default value for this parameter is:

```
('parent::db:set',  
'parent::db:book',  
'parent::db:part',  
'parent::db:reference',  
'self::db:refentry',  
'self::db:section',  
'self::db:sect1')
```

In other words all of the direct children of `set`, `book`, `part`, `reference` will become chunks (the special case of `info` is automatically excluded); `refentry`, `section`, and `sect1` become chunks anywhere they appear. In the case of recursive sections, `$chunk-section-depth` also applies.

The namespaces in `$chunk-filter-namespaces` will be in-scope when this expression is evaluated.

# \$chunk-nav

Add keyboard navigation to chunks?

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }chunk-nav                 |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                    |
| Used in:    | main.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$chunk-nav as xs:string := 'true'`

## Description

If `$chunk-nav` is true, keyboard navigation will be added to chunked output. This is accomplished by adding the `$chunk-nav-js` script to the generated HTML.

**Table 1.1 Default keyboard navigation keys**

| Key                                 | Navigation       |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| <code>N</code> or <code>→</code>    | Next sibling     |
| <code>P</code> or <code>←</code>    | Previous sibling |
| <code>U</code> or <code>↑</code>    | Parent           |
| <code>H</code> or <code>Home</code> | Home             |

In addition, if the speaker notes extension is used, `S` will toggle between the normal view and the speaker notes view.

# \$chunk-nav-js

Script to support keyboard navigation.

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }chunk-nav-js              |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                    |
| Used in:    | main.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$chunk-nav-js as xs:string := 'js/chunk-nav.js'
```

## Description

If chunk navigation is enabled, this script is added to each chunk to support keyboard navigation.

# \$chunk-output-base-uri

Output base URI for chunks.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }chunk-output-base-uri   |
| Defined in: | param.xsl  |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/chunk.xsl, modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="chunk-output-base-uri"
  as="xs:string">
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="not($v:chunk)">
      <!-- it doesn't actually matter -->
      <xsl:sequence select=""/>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:when use-when="function-available('ext:cwd')" test="true()">
      <xsl:message select="'Default output base uri:',          resolve-uri(ext:cwd(), static-base-uri())" />
      <xsl:sequence select="resolve-uri(ext:cwd(), static-base-uri())" />
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:message terminate="yes" select="'You must specify the $chunk-output-base-uri'" />
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:param>
```

## Description

This parameter identifies the output directory where “chunks” will be stored. If the stylesheet is not producing chunked results (see *Section 2.6*, “*Chunked*” output), this parameter has no effect.

If the `ext:cwd()` extension function (see *Section 2.5, Extension functions*) is available, its value will be the default value for this parameter. If the extension isn't available, you must provide a value for this parameter.



# \$chunk-renumber-footnotes

Renumber footnotes when chunking?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }chunk-renumber-footnotes              |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:chunk-renumber-footnotes             |

## Synopsis

```
$chunk-renumber-footnotes := 'true'
```

## Description

If this parameter is true, footnotes will be renumbered within chunks. See

`$v:chunk-renumber-footnotes`.

# \$chunk-section-depth

Returns the chunking depth for recursive sections.

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }chunk-section-depth                |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/chunk.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$chunk-section-depth := 1`

## Description

This parameter is only relevant when chunking is being performed, see *Section 2.6*, “*Chunked*” output. For recursive sections ( `section` , and `refsection` ), if the section would be a chunk according to `$chunk-include` , it is further tested against `$chunk-section-depth` . If it is nested more deeply than `$chunk-section-depth` , it will not be considered for chunking.

### Note



In principle, this parameter is unnecessary as it could be represented by `$chunk-exclude` expressions. However, changing the section depth is a common customization, so it’s handled as a separate parameter.

# \$classsynopsis-indent

Indent for `classsynopsis` members.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }classsynopsis-indent</code>                                   |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>   |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/programming.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

```
$classsynopsis-indent := ''
```

## Description

Elements inside a class synopsis (field and method declarations, for example) will be indented by this amount.

# \$component-numbers-inherit

Include component labels in section labels?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }component-numbers-inherit</code>                         |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/titles.xml</code> |
| Used by:    | <code>\$v:title-properties</code>                                 |

## Synopsis

`$component-numbers-inherit as xs:string := 'false'`

## Description

If true, section labels will be prefixed with the label of their containing component ( `chapter` , `appendix` , etc.) In other words, the first section of chapter 2 will be labeled “2.1” if this is true and simply “1” if it’s false.

See also `$division-numbers-inherit` , `$section-numbers-inherit` , and `$v:title-properties` .

# \$control-js

Script to support theme selection.

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }control-js                |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                    |
| Used in:    | main.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$control-js as xs:string := 'js/controls.js'
```

## Description

If the `$theme-picker` is enabled, a link to this script will be added to the document. This script must contain the JavaScript necessary to support the theme controls.

# \$copyright-collapse-years

Collapse sequential copyright years into a range?

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }copyright-collapse-years          |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                            |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/info.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$copyright-collapse-years := true()`

## Description

If true, sequential copyright years will be collapsed into a range.

For example,

```
<copyright>
<year>1993</year>
<year>1997</year>
<year>1998</year>
<year>1999</year>
<holder>Jane Smith</holder>
</copyright>
```

might be rendered: “Copyright © 1993, 1997–1999 Jane Smith”.

If `$copyright-collapse-years` is false, that would be rendered: “Copyright © 1993, 1997, 1998, 1999 Jane Smith”.

See also `$copyright-year-range-separator` and `$copyright-year-separator`.

# \$copyright-year-range-separator

Separator character for copyright year ranges.

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }copyright-year-range-separator    |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                            |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/info.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$copyright-year-range-separator := '—'

## Description

When a sequence of copyright years is collapsed into a range, this character is used to separate the first and last years.

See also `$copyright-collapse-years` and `$copyright-year-separator`.

# \$copyright-year-separator

Separator character for copyright years.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }copyright-year-separator</code>                        |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/info.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

`$copyright-year-separator := ', '`

## Description

When a series of copyright years (or year ranges) is formatted, this string is used to separate them.

See also `$copyright-year-range-separator` and `$copyright-collapse-years`.



# \$date-date-format, \$date-dateTime-format

Format strings for dates and dateTimes.

|   |
|---|
| Parameter: {}date-date-format   |
| {}date-dateTime-format  |
| Defined in: param.xml (2)   |
| Used in: parameter-maps.xml, modules/functions.xml, modules/info.xml, modules/inlines.xml |
| Used by: f:date-format()  |

## Synopsis

\$date-date-format := '[D01] [MNn,\*-3] [Y0001]'

\$date-dateTime-format := '[H01]:[m01] [D01] [MNn,\*-3] [Y0001]'

## Description

The most convenient format for storing dates that will be machine processed: sorted, indexed, etc, is *ISO 8601*. When publishing these dates, it's often desirable to use a different format, one more familiar to readers.

A `pubdate` that conforms to an ISO 8601 date (“yyyy-mm-dd”) will be formatted with the `$date-date-format`; one that conforms to an ISO 8601 dateTime (“yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss”) will be formatted with the `$date-dateTime-format`.

See also `f:date-format()`.

# \$dc-metadata

Output Dublin Core metadata?

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }dc-metadata                       |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                            |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/head.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$dc-metadata as xs:string := 'true'

## Description

If this parameter is true, the `head` element of each result document will contain `meta` elements for Dublin Core metadata that can be derived from the source document.

# \$debug

Debugging flags.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }debug                                 |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:debug                                |
| Static:     | Yes                                      |

## Synopsis

```
$debug as xs:string := "
```

## Description

The `$debug` parameter contains a space separated list of flags. Depending on which flags are enabled, various additional debugging messages will be emitted during processing.

The following flags are supported:

callouts

Display additional information about callout processing.

cals-align-char

Display additional information about the computation of character alignment processing in CALS tables.

chunk-cleanup

Display additional information about chunk cleanup processing.

chunks

Display additional information about chunk selection.

db4to5

Display additional information about the DocBook 4.x to 5.x upgrade process.

#### dynamic-profile

Display additional information about dynamic profiling.

#### dynamic-profile-suppress

Display additional information about what elements are suppressed by dynamic profiling.

#### image-properties

Display additional information about the results of the extracting properties from images. This will display all of the properties available from each image.

#### intra-chunk-links

Display additional information about the resolution of intra-chunk references. to links.

#### intra-chunk-refs

Display additional information about intra-chunk references.

#### mediaobject-uris

Display additional information about how media object URIs are constructed.

#### objects

Display additional information about how media objects are selected.

#### pipeline

Display additional information about the pipeline processing stages.

#### profile

Display additional information about profiling.

#### profile-suppress

Display additional information about what elements are suppressed by profiling.

#### properties

Display additional information about the properties associated with a verbatim environment.

#### render-verbatim

Display additional information about how verbatim environments are rendered.

#### tables

Display additional information about how tables are rendered.

#### template-matches

Display additional information about how title page templates are selected.

#### templates

Display additional information about title page templates.

#### verbatim

Display additional information about how verbatim elements are processed.

#### xlink

Display additional information about XLink resolution.

# \$default-float-style

Default float style.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }default-float-style                     |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                  |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/attributes.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$default-float-style := 'left'
```

## Description

The `floatstyle` attribute on formal objects ( `figure` , etc.) indicates that they should float. This is achieved by adding the float style as a class value in the HTML output. If the value of `floatstyle` is “float”, then the `$default-float-style` will be applied. In other words, the CSS classes will be “float left” (as long as `$default-float-style` is “left”). If any other value is given for `floatstyle` , then the CSS classes will be “float *value*”.

# \$default-language

Default language.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }default-language</code>                                      |
| Defined in: | <code>modules/gentext.xsl</code>                                      |
| Used in:    | <code>modules/gentext.xsl</code> , <code>modules/functions.xsl</code> |
| Used by:    | <code>f:language()</code> , <code>f:110n-language()</code>            |

## Synopsis

`$default-language := 'en'`

## Description

If the stylesheets need to generate text (the names of labels such as “Chapter”, for example), they attempt to do so in the same language as the document. This is determined by finding the nearest in-scope `xml:lang` attribute from the context where the generated text is required.

If there is no in-scope `xml:lang` attribute, or if there is no localization available for the language specified, the `$default-language` is used instead.

# \$default-length-magnitude, \$default-length-unit

The magnitude and units of the default length.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{}</code> default-length-magnitude |
|             | <code>{}</code> default-length-unit      |
| Defined in: | param.xsl (2)                            |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/units.xsl    |
| Used by:    | f:parse-length()                         |

## Synopsis

```
$default-length-magnitude := 25.0
```

```
$default-length-unit := '%'
```

## Description

If the stylesheet encounters a length that it cannot parse, the default magnitude and unit are used for that length. See *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*.



# \$default-personal-name-style

The default style for formatting personal names.

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }default-personal-name-style       |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                            |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/info.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$default-personal-name-style := 'first-last'`

## Description

The stylesheets can format personal names in a variety of ways. Absent any indication of what style to use, the `$default-personal-name-style` will be used; see `t:person-name` .

# \$default-theme

Default theme.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }default-theme                              |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                     |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$default-theme as xs:string := "
```

## Description

If a `$default-theme` is specified, its value will be added to the class attribute on the `html` element(s) generated. The actual theme implementation is performed in CSS. See `$theme-list` for a list of themes. You can add your own themes with custom CSS (with `m:html-head-links` mode, for example).

# \$division-numbers-inherit

Include division labels in component labels?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }division-numbers-inherit            |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                              |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/titles.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:title-properties                   |

## Synopsis

```
$division-numbers-inherit as xs:string := 'false'
```

## Description

If true, component labels will be prefixed with the label of their containing division ( `part` , `reference` , etc.) In other words, chapter 2 in part I will be labeled “I.2” if this is true and simply “2” if it’s false.

See also `$component-numbers-inherit` , `$section-numbers-inherit` , and `$v:title-properties` .

# \$docbook-transclusion

Enable DocBook transclusion processing.

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | {docbook-transclusion}          |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                       |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, drivers.xsl |
| Used by:    | t:preprocess                    |

## Synopsis

```
$docbook-transclusion := 'false'
```

## Description

The `$docbook-transclusion` controls whether or not DocBook transclusion processing (see *Transclusion*) is performed. The default at present is false because I don't believe it's in widespread use and transclusion processing on large documents can be quite slow. If either of those conditions change, the default may become true in some future version of the stylesheets.

# \$dynamic-profile-error

How are errors in dynamic profiling handled?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | {dynamic-profile-error}                 |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$dynamic-profile-error := 'ignore'`

## Description

If an error occurs evaluating a dynamic profiling expression, what should happen? That depends on the setting of `$dynamic-profile-error`:

`ignore`

The error is ignored. This has no effect on whether or not the element is included.

`include`

The error is ignored and the expression is considered to have returned a value of “true”.

`exclude`

The error is ignored and the expression is considered to have returned a value of “false”.

`error`

Raises the `dbe:DYNAMIC-PROFILE-EVAL-ERROR` exception.

any other value

Raises the `dbe:INVALID-DYNAMIC-PROFILE-ERROR` exception.

# \$dynamic-profiles

Is dynamic profiling enabled?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }dynamic-profiles                     |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$dynamic-profiles as xs:string := 'false'

## Description

If this parameter is true, dynamic profiling will be applied to the document. See *Section 2.7.3, Dynamic profiling*.

# \$experimental-pmuj

Insert reverse links.

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }experimental-pmuj                  |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/xlink.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$experimental-pmuj := 'false'`

## Description

If `$experimental-pmuj` is true, then links will be inserted from link targets back to link sources. In other words, if clicking on “A” jumps you to “B”, the stylesheets will add a link at “B” that jumps you back back to “A”. (Pmuj is jump spelled backwards.)

### Caution



This feature is entirely experimental. It may change in arbitrary ways or it may be abandoned.

Support is limited at the moment to inlines and formal objects that have title pages. There's currently no where to insert markup for every possible element that could be a link target.

Pmuj's from title pages should probably be inserted in the heading, not above it, just because the styling would be nicer.

# \$footnote-numeration

How are footnotes numbered?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }footnote-numeration   |
| Defined in: | param.xml  |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/footnotes.xml, modules/chunk-cleanup.xml |

## Synopsis

\$footnote-numeration := ('1')

## Description

There are different styles of footnote numeration. This parameter contains a list of the symbols that should be used. If there could be more footnotes than symbols in the list, the last symbol in the list must be a character suitable for formatting numbers.

For example, if the sequence in `$footnote-numeration` is “\*”, “†”, “a”, then the first footnote will be marked with “\*”, the second with “†”, the third with “a”, the forth with “b”, and so on.

When chunking, footnotes may be renumbered within each chunk (see `$chunk-renumber-footnotes` ).



# \$formal-object-title-placement

Specify placement of title on formal elements.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }formal-object-title-placement         |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:formal-object-title-placement        |

## Synopsis

`$formal-object-title-placement := 'after formalgroup:before'`

## Description

Formal elements are elements with a title that are often displayed with a caption: `figure`, `table`, `example` and `equation`. The `$formal-object-title-placement` parameter determines if the title precedes or follows the element itself.

The parameter consists of a series of tokens, “`before`”, “`after`”, or “*element:position*”. The named forms (e.g., `figure:before`) take precedence with the unnamed form serving as a default for any that don’t have named forms.

# \$funcsynopsis-default-style

Default style for function synopses.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }funcsynopsis-default-style               |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                   |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/programming.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$funcsynopsis-default-style := 'kr'
```

## Description

The `funcsynopsis` element can be rendered in several styles. The `$funcsynopsis-default-style` parameter determines which style is used by default.

# \$funcsynopsis-table-threshold

Maximum width of a function synopsis.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }funcsynopsis-table-threshold             |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                   |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/programming.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$funcsynopsis-table-threshold := 40

## Description

When rendering `funcsynopsis` elements, the width of the synopsis depends on the number of parameters and the lengths of their names and types. If the width of the `funcsynopsis` would exceed `$funcsynopsis-table-threshold` characters, the presentation switches from an inline style to a tabular style. The tabular style aligns the parameters up vertically after the function name.

# \$funcsynopsis-trailing-punctuation

Trailing punctuation in function synopses.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }funcsynopsis-trailing-punctuation        |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                   |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/programming.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$funcsynopsis-trailing-punctuation := ';'`

## Description

This punctuation character is added after the end of a `funcsynopsis` . The default value of “;” is appropriate for C and other languages that use “;” as statement separator.

# \$generate-html-page

Generate the HTML page structure around the styled document.

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }generate-html-page           |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                       |
| Used in:    | docbook.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$generate-html-page as xs:string := 'true'`

## Description

If this parameter is true, then a complete HTML page will be generated for the transformed document: an `html` tag, `head` and `body` tags, etc. If it's false, then only the “raw” transformed content will be produced. This is true for both the primary output and any secondary result documents.

### Note



When the “raw” output option is selected, links to the CSS stylesheets, scripts, and other interactive features will not be generated. You must make sure those are provided in some other way.

# \$generate-index

Automatically generate an index?

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | {generate-index}                      |
| Defined in: | param.xml                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/index.xml |

## Synopsis

`$generate-index := 'true'`

## Description

If a document contains an empty `setindex`, `index`, or `indexdiv`, and `$generate-index` is true, then an index will automatically be generated from any `indexterm` s found in the document.

# \$generate-nested-toc

Determines if subsubsections appear in the table of contents.

|             |                                     |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }generate-nested-toc              |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                           |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/toc.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate-nested-toc"
  as="xs:string">
  not(f:section(.))
  or (f:section(.) and f:section-depth(.) le $vp:section-toc-depth)
</xsl:param>
```

## Description

The `$generate-nested-toc` parameter is an XPath expression. If it evaluates to true when the context item is an element that appears in the table of contents (ToC), then the immediate children of that element will may also occur in the ToC.

For example, if this expression returns true for a `chapter` element that appears in the ToC, then the first level sections in that chapter will also appear in the ToC. If the expression returns true for one of those sections, then the second level sections of the chapter will appear in the ToC, etc.

# \$generate-toc

Generate a table-of-contents?

|             |                                     |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }generate-toc                     |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                           |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/toc.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate-toc"
  as="xs:string">
  (empty(parent::*) and self::db:article)
  or self::db:set or self::db:book
  or self::db:part or self::db:reference
</xsl:param>
```

## Description

The `$generate-toc` parameter is an XPath expression. If the expression evaluates to true for any element, then a table of contents will be generated automatically at the beginning of that element.



# \$generate-trivial-toc

Generate a trivial table-of-contents?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }generate-trivial-toc</code>                           |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>   |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/toc.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

`$generate-trivial-toc as xs:string := 'false'`

## Description

If the `$generate-trivial-toc` parameter is true, a table of contents will be generated even if it consists of only a single entry. Otherwise, such “trivial” tables of contents will be elided.

A trivial table of contents will always be generated if there are other lists of titles (for example, a list of figures). This parameter applies only to top-level tables of contents. Nested tables of contents will be generated even if they consist of only a single entry.

# \$generated-id-root

The string generated as the unique identifier for the root of the tree.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { <code>}</code> generated-id-root        |
| Defined in: | modules/shared.xsl                        |
| Used in:    | modules/shared.xsl, modules/functions.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:generate-id(), f:generate-id()          |

## Synopsis

```
$generated-id-root := 'R'
```

## Description

When `f:generate-id()` is constructing a unique identifier for an element, it walks up the ancestors of that element. If it reaches the root of the tree, it uses `$generated-id-root` to mark that location.

# \$generated-id-sep

The string generated to separate parts of a unique identifier.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }generated-id-sep</code>                                     |
| Defined in: | <code>modules/shared.xsl</code>                                      |
| Used in:    | <code>modules/shared.xsl</code> , <code>modules/functions.xsl</code> |
| Used by:    | <code>f:generate-id()</code> , <code>f:generate-id()</code>          |

## Synopsis

`$generated-id-sep := ' _ '`

## Description

When `f:generate-id()` is constructing a unique identifier for an element, it walks up the ancestors of that element. To make the identifiers easier to read, and to disambiguate values, it places `$generated-id-sep` between each component that it uses.

### Note



Historically, a “.” was used as the separator. However, if JavaScript is going to be used to process the HTML documents that the stylesheet produces, that may be inconvenient. (Because selectors use “.” to separate element names from class values.)

# \$generator-metadata

Output generator metadata?

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }generator-metadata                |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                            |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/head.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$generator-metadata as xs:string := 'true'`

## Description

If this parameter is true, the `head` element of each result document will contain a `meta` element with the name `generator` that identifies the stylesheet and processor used to produce the result.

# \$gentext-language

Specifies language for generated text.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }gentext-language</code>                                     |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xsl</code>   |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xsl</code> , <code>modules/functions.xsl</code> |
| Used by:    | <code>f:110n-language()</code>                                       |

## Synopsis

`$gentext-language := ()`

## Description

The language used for generated text (words “Chapter” and “Figure”, for example) usually depends on the language of the (section of) the document where they appear. If

`$gentext-language` is specified, that language will be used for all generated text, regardless of the context.

# \$glossary-collection

An external collection of glossary entries.

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }glossary-collection          |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                       |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, drivers.xsl |
| Used by:    | t:preprocess                    |

## Synopsis

`$glossary-collection` as `xs:string` := "

## Description

It's often convenient to share a common glossary across many documents. If `$glossary-collection` points to a glossary, the stylesheets will automatically populate glossary entries in the document being transformed.

To achieve this:

1. Create a shared glossary and store it somewhere. Make sure that each entry in your shared glossary has a unique `xml:id` value.
2. Run your transformation with `$glossary-collection` set to the URI of that document.
3. In the document you're transforming, refer to the shared entries with completely empty `glossentry` elements that have the same `xml:id` as an entry in the shared glossary.

The stylesheets will copy those entries into your document before processing it.

# \$glossary-sort-entries

Sort glossaries?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }glossary-sort-entries</code>                               |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/glossary.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

```
$glossary-sort-entries := true()
```

## Description

If `$glossary-sort-entries` is true, the entries in a `glossary` or `glosslist` will be sorted before transformation. This saves the author from the burden of maintaining the list in a strictly alphabetic order.

# \$html-extension

The extension used for HTML output when chunking.

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }html-extension                     |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/chunk.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:chunk-filename()                    |

## Synopsis

```
$html-extension := '.html'
```

## Description

When using chunking (see *Section 2.6, “Chunked” output*), the resulting HTML documents will have this extension by default.



# \$image-ignore-scaling

Ignore scaling?

|  |
|--|
| Parameter: {}image-ignore-scaling  |
| Defined in: param.xsl  |
| Used in: parameter-maps.xsl, modules/objects.xsl   |
| Used by: f:object-width(), f:object-height(), f:object-contentwidth(), f:object-contentheight(), f:object-scalefit(), f:object-scale() |

## Synopsis

\$image-ignore-scaling as xs:boolean := false()

## Description

If this parameter is true, all of the scaling attributes on images are ignored. Images will be displayed at their intrinsic size.

# \$image-nominal-height

Nominal height of an image.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }image-nominal-height                  |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:image-nominal-height                 |

## Synopsis

```
$image-nominal-height := '4in'
```

## Description

If the extension functions necessary to determine the intrinsic height of an image are unavailable, or if the height cannot be determined, this value will be used as the assumed intrinsic height of the image.

# `$image-nominal-width`

Nominal width of an image.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }image-nominal-width</code>                                 |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xsl</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xsl</code> , <code>modules/variable.xsl</code> |
| Used by:    | <code>\$v:image-nominal-width</code>                                |

## Synopsis

`$image-nominal-width := $nominal-page-width`

## Description

If the extension functions necessary to determine the intrinsic width of an image are unavailable, or if the width cannot be determined, this value will be used as the assumed intrinsic width of the image.

# \$image-property-warning

Warn if image properties cannot be obtained?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }image-property-warning               |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/objects.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:object-properties()                   |

## Synopsis

```
$image-property-warning := true()
```

## Description

This flag controls whether or not an `xsl:message` is emitted when the `ext:image-properties()` extension function is unavailable.

# \$index-on-role, \$index-on-type

Make distinct indexes based on role and type?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }index-on-type</code>                      |
|             | <code>{ }index-on-role</code>                      |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml (2)</code>                         |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml, modules/index.xml</code> |
| Used by:    | <code>t:generate-index</code>                      |

## Synopsis

`$index-on-role := 'true'`

`$index-on-type := 'true'`

## Description

DocBook supports the creation of different types of index. A book that documents an API might have a general index, for example, and also an index of functions, an index of variables, etc.

Typed indexes are created by specifying the index type in the `type` or `role` attribute. If `$index-on-type` is true, then separate indexes will be generated based on `type` values. If `$index-on-role` is true, then separate indexes will be generated based on `role` values.

# \$index-show-entries

Make index entries visible in the text?

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }index-show-entries                 |
| Defined in: | param.xml                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/index.xml |

## Synopsis

\$index-show-entries := ()

## Description

If this value is non-empty, small markers will be left in the text where `indexterm` elements appear. This is probably not appropriate for final publication, but it can be a useful way to review the level of indexing.

# \$indexed-section-groups

Generate index entries grouped by section.

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }indexed-section-groups             |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/index.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$indexed-section-groups := 'true'
```

## Description

Before the introduction of this parameter, an automatically generated index contained only one index entry for any given section. If the `$indexed-section-groups` parameter is true, an index entry will be generated for every `indexterm`, with a `span` surrounding all of the entries for each section. This results in a more complete index while still preserving the ability to see in which sections the terms occur.

# \$lists-of-equations

Generate a list of equations?

|             |                                     |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }lists-of-equations               |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                           |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/toc.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$lists-of-equations as xs:string := 'false'`

## Description

If true, a list of equations will be generated. By default, they are only generated for `book`s and `set`s.

This is a pseudo-boolean parameter. It is considered true if it has the value '1', 'yes', or 'true'. Any other value is considered false.



# \$lists-of-examples

Generate a list of examples?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }lists-of-examples</code>                              |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>   |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/toc.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

`$lists-of-examples as xs:string := 'true'`

## Description

If true, a list of examples will be generated. By default, they are only generated for `book` s and `set` s.

This is a pseudo-boolean parameter. It is considered true if it has the value '1', 'yes', or 'true'. Any other value is considered false.

# \$lists-of-figures

Generate a list of figures?

|             |                                     |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }lists-of-figures                 |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                           |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/toc.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$lists-of-figures as xs:string := 'true'`

## Description

If true, a list of figures will be generated. By default, they are only generated for `book`s and `set`s.

This is a pseudo-boolean parameter. It is considered true if it has the value '1', 'yes', or 'true'. Any other value is considered false.

# \$lists-of-procedures

Generate a list of figures?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }lists-of-procedures</code>                            |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>   |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/toc.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

`$lists-of-procedures as xs:string := 'false'`

## Description

If true, a list of procedures will be generated. By default, they are only generated for `book` s and `set` s.

This is a pseudo-boolean parameter. It is considered true if it has the value '1', 'yes', or 'true'. Any other value is considered false.

# \$lists-of-tables

Generate a list of tables?

|             |                                     |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }lists-of-tables                  |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                           |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/toc.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$lists-of-tables as xs:string := 'true'`

## Description

If true, a list of tables will be generated. By default, they are only generated for `book` s and `set` s.

This is a pseudo-boolean parameter. It is considered true if it has the value '1', 'yes', or 'true'. Any other value is considered false.

# \$local-conventions

Transformation for local conventions.

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }local-conventions            |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                       |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, drivers.xsl |
| Used by:    | t:preprocess                    |

## Synopsis

\$local-conventions as xs:string? := ()

## Description

This parameter allows you to specify a transformation for local markup conventions. This book uses several non-DocBook tagging conventions as a typing convenience, `<att>` for `<tag class="attribute">`, for example. These can be translated back into proper DocBook markup by the `$local-conventions` stylesheet. This stylesheet is run at the end of the `t:preprocess` step, just before validation (see `$relax-ng-grammar`).

The example stylesheet from the test suite looks like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"
  xmlns:db="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="db xs"
  version="3.0">

  <xsl:template match="db:att">
    <tag class="attribute">
      <xsl:copy-of select="@* except @class"/>
      <xsl:apply-templates/>
    
```

```

    </tag>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="db:mode">
  <code role="{string-join(
    distinct-values((@role/string(), 'mode')),
    ' ')}">
    <xsl:copy-of select="@* except @role"/>
    <xsl:apply-templates/>
  </code>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="element(">
  <xsl:copy>
    <xsl:apply-templates select="@*,node()"/>
  </xsl:copy>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="attribute()|text()|comment()
  |processing-instruction(">
  <xsl:copy/>
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>

```

It transforms pseudo-DocBook elements “`att`” and “`mode`” into valid DocBook markup.

# $\$mathml-js$

JavaScript library supporting MathML.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }mathml-js</code>                               |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>                                  |
| Used in:    | <code>main.xml</code> , <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

$\$mathml-js := 'https://cdnjs.cloudflare.com/ajax/libs/mathjax/2.7.1/MathJax.js?config=MML\_CHTML'$

## Description

If your documents use MathML, this library will be included to support MathML rendering. *MathJax* is a popular choice.

# \$mediaobject-accessibility

Accessibility settings for media objects.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }mediaobject-accessibility            |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/objects.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$mediaobject-accessibility as xs:string\* := ('summary', 'details')

## Description

The `$mediaobject-accessibility` parameter determines how accessibility features are added to media objects (image, video, and audio elements).

The value of this parameter is a list of strings. If the list contains:

summary

A `summary` attribute will be added if there is an `alt` element or a `textobject` containing a single `phrase` is available.

details

A `details` element will be added to the `div` that surrounds the image if there is a `textobject` containing anything other than a single `phrase` available.

The list may contain either or both values. If other values are present, they are ignored.

See *Example 1.1, An example of media object accessibility*.

```
<mediaobject>
  <alt>This is a skeuomorphic “postage stamp” with the
  DocBook logo.</alt>
  <imageobject>
    <imagedata fileref="media/stamp400x256.png"/>
```



```
</imageobject>
```

```
<textobject>
```

```
<para>This is a skeuomorphic image of a “postage stamp.” Centrally, it features the DocBook wood duck logo. the word “DocBook” appears on the left hand side, rotated 90° counter-clockwise. The DocBook tag line, “The Source for Documentation” is printed in the upper-right corner.
```

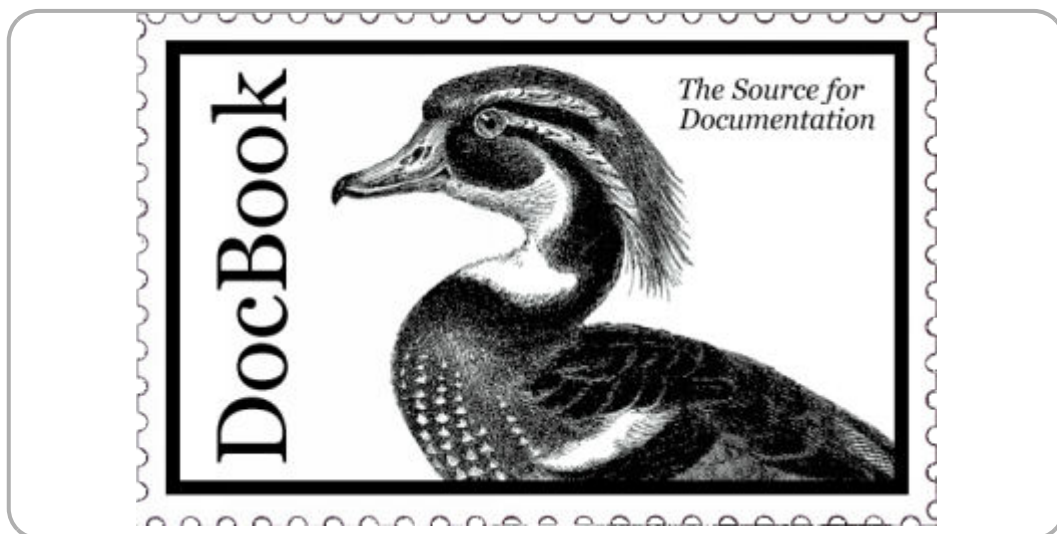
```
</para>
```

```
</textobject>
```

```
</mediaobject>
```

### Example 1.1 An example of media object accessibility

One possible rendering of such an example:



Inspection of the HTML will reveal that the `summary` attribute is present on the `div` that wraps the figure and a `details` element precedes the image. These may or may not be rendered by your user agent depending on its accessibility features and settings.

See also `$table-accessibility`.

# \$mediaobject-exclude-extensions

Exclude media objects by extension.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }mediaobject-exclude-extensions       |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/objects.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$mediaobject-exclude-extensions := ('.eps', '.ps', '.pdf')
```

## Description

The `mediaobject` element (and `inlinemediaobject`) can contain several, alternative objects. The `$mediaobject-exclude-extensions` parameter provides a way to exclude some of them.

One common use case is to provide two versions of each image, one as a bitmap, perhaps a PNG ([https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portable\\_Network\\_Graphics](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portable_Network_Graphics)), and another as a vector, perhaps an EPS ([https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Encapsulated\\_PostScript](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Encapsulated_PostScript)). Then `$mediaobject-exclude-extensions` can be used to exclude “.eps” images from the web format and “.png” images from the print (or paged media) format.

# \$mediaobject-input-base-uri

Base URI of images and other media in the XML sources.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }mediaobject-input-base-uri            |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:mediaobject-input-base-uri           |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="mediaobject-input-base-uri"
  as="xs:string">
  <xsl:sequence use-when="function-available('ext:cwd')"
    select="resolve-uri(ext:cwd(), static-base-uri())"/>
  <xsl:sequence use-when="not(function-available('ext:cwd'))" select=""/>
</xsl:param>
```

## Description

Computing the correct URI for media objects (images, videos, audio files, etc.) is complicated. See *Section 4.4, Mediaobject URIs*. The `$mediaobject-input-base-uri` is used to compute the absolute base URI of input media objects.

If the “cwd” extension function is available, then the default value of this parameter is the current working directory. Otherwise, the default value is the empty string.

The current working directory is only likely to be a useful value for this parameter if you are running the processor in the same directory where your XML source files are stored. See `$v:mediaobject-input-base-uri`.

# \$mediaobject-output-base-uri

Base URI of images and other media in the output.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }mediaobject-output-base-uri           |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:mediaobject-output-base-uri          |

## Synopsis

\$mediaobject-output-base-uri as xs:string := "

## Description

Computing the correct URI for media objects (images, videos, audio files, etc.) is complicated. See *Section 4.4, Mediaobject URIs*. The `$mediaobject-output-base-uri` is used to compute the base URI of media objects in the output.

It defaults to the empty string. See `$v:mediaobject-output-base-uri`.

# \$nominal-page-width

The nominal page width.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }nominal-page-width                               |
| Defined in: | param.xsl   |
| Used in:    | param.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$image-nominal-width, \$v:nominal-page-width       |

## Synopsis

`$nominal-page-width := '6in'`

## Description

To calculate the width of the columns in some complex CALS tables, the stylesheets need to know the page width. The `$nominal-page-width` is used for this value.

# \$number-single-appendix

Number a single appendix?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }number-single-appendix</code>                            |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/titles.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

`$number-single-appendix := 'true'`

## Description

If a book (or other element) has several appendixes, they will be numbered, usually “A”, “B”, “C”, etc. If there is only a single appendix, it will be numbered if `$number-single-appendix` is true. Otherwise, it will be unnumbered.

This can be used to create the numbered title “Appendix” for a single appendix.

# \$olink-databases

External olink databases.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }olink-databases                       |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:olink-databases                      |

## Synopsis

\$olink-databases as xs:string := "

## Description

The `$olink-databases` parameter is a comma separated list of URIs. Each URI should contain an `olink` target database.

# \$orderedlist-item-numeration

Numeration for nested ordered lists.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }orderedlist-item-numeration            |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                 |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/functions.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:orderedlist-item-numeration()           |

## Synopsis

`$orderedlist-item-numeration := '1aiAI'`

## Description

The `$orderedlist-item-numeration` parameter controls the numeration style of nested `orderedlist` elements. Items in the top-level list will use the numeration style of the first character in `$orderedlist-item-numeration`, items in the second-level list will use the numeration style of the second character in the string, etc. If the list depth exceeds the number of characters in the `$orderedlist-item-numeration`, selection “wraps back around” to the first character.

In other words, if the string is “1ai”: list items at the first, fourth, seventh, tenth, etc. depth will have arabic numeration. List items at the second, fifth, eighth, eleventh, etc. depth will have lowercase alpha numeration, etc.



# \$othername-in-middle

Treat othername as a middle name.

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }othername-in-middle               |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                            |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/info.xsl |
| Used by:    | t:person-name-first-last             |

## Synopsis

\$othername-in-middle := 'true'

## Description

If `$othername-in-middle` is true, then the first `othername` in a `personname` will be presented as the person’s “middle” name. See `t:person-name`.

# \$output-media

The intended output media.

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Parameter:  | { }output-media |
| Defined in: | main.xsl        |
| Used in:    | Not used.       |

## Synopsis

```
$output-media := 'screen'
```

## Description

The `$output-media` parameter identifies the intended output medium, `screen` or `print`. It can be used to make conditional transformations.

# \$oxy-markup

Is Oxygen change tracking markup rendered?

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | {oxy-markup}                    |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                       |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, drivers.xsl |
| Used by:    | t:preprocess                    |

## Synopsis

`$oxy-markup := 'false'`

## Description

If `$oxy-markup` is true, then the change tracking processing instructions that Oxygen inserts into the document will be transformed into elements marked with CSS classes for rendering in the output. See `$oxy-markup-css`.

Rendering Oxygen change markup can be specified on a document-by-document bases with a `db` processing instruction. If the `oxy-markup` pseudo-attribute is true, the markup will be rendered. This processing instruction must be in the `info` element of the document element.

# \$oxy-markup-css

CSS markup for Oxygen changebar markup.

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | {oxy-markup-css                      |
| Defined in: | param.xml                            |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/head.xml |

## Synopsis

```
$oxy-markup-css := 'css/oxy-markup.css'
```

## Description

If Oxygen change markup is rendered, this CSS file is added to the output for styling the added and deleted regions.

# \$page-style

Select the page style.

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | <code>{page-style}</code>       |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xsl</code>          |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xsl</code> |

## Synopsis

```
$page-style as xs:string := 'article'
```

## Description

This value selects the page style. The page style is reflected in the `class` attribute on the root `html` element. It is then used by the CSS stylesheets. A page style of “`value`” will be added to the class attribute as “`value-style`”.

The CSS print stylesheets support two styles: `article` and `book`. The book style places new components on a right-hand page and adjusts the inner margin for binding.

# \$paper-size

Select the paper style.

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }paper-size</code>      |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xsl</code>          |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xsl</code> |

## Synopsis

`$paper-size as xs:string? := ()`

## Description

This value selects the paper size. The paper size is reflected in the `class` attribute on the root `html` element. It is then used by the CSS stylesheets.

The CSS print stylesheets support three page sizes: `A4`, `A5`, and (US) `Letter`. Additional sizes can be implemented in CSS.

# \$persistent-toc

Generate a persistent Table of Contents?

Parameter: {}persistent-toc

Defined in: param.xml

Used in: parameter-maps.xml, modules/head.xml, modules/chunk-cleanup.xml, modules/chunk-output.xml

## Synopsis

`$persistent-toc := 'false'`

## Description

If this value is true, then a copy of the Table of Contents (ToC) will be added to every file produced. This Table of Contents is read by JavaScript when displayed in the browser and provides a “popup” ToC on every page.

### Note



The Table of Contents is secreted away in a `script` element so that it will be ignored by screen readers and other user agents that don't support JavaScript or CSS.

The persistent ToC popup is transient by default, meaning that it will disappear if you use it to navigate to a different page. If you open the popup by “shift-clicking” on it, the ToC will persist until you dismiss it.

# `$persistent-toc-css`

Persistent ToC CSS.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }persistent-toc-css</code>                              |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/head.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

```
$persistent-toc-css := 'css/docbook-toc.css'
```

## Description

If the persistent ToC popup is enabled, a link to this CSS file will be added to the HTML HEAD.



# \$persistent-toc-js

Script to support the persistent ToC.

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }persistent-toc-js         |
| Defined in: | param.xml                    |
| Used in:    | main.xml, parameter-maps.xml |

## Synopsis

```
$persistent-toc-js := 'js/persistent-toc.js'
```

## Description

If the persistent ToC is enabled, a link to this script will be added to the document. This script must contain the JavaScript necessary to support the persistent ToC feature.

# \$persistent-toc-search

Generate a search box in the persistent ToC.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }persistent-toc-search                     |
| Defined in: | param.xml                                    |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/chunk-output.xml |

## Synopsis

```
$persistent-toc-search := 'true'
```

## Description

If this value is true, then a search box is added to the top of the persistent Table of Contents (ToC). Any string typed into this search box will be used to filter the entries shown below it.

The filter is a case-insensitive regular expression match against the text of each line in the ToC where arbitrary characters may occur anywhere in the string. In other words, the text “cat” will generate the regular expression “c.\*a.\*t.\*” for the purpose of searching.

This setting has no effect if `$persistent-toc` is false.

# \$pixels-per-inch

The number of pixels per inch.

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }pixels-per-inch                    |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/units.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:unit-scale                        |

## Synopsis

```
$pixels-per-inch := 96.0
```

## Description

If the stylesheets need to convert between absolute and relative units (see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*), this value is used to convert lengths into pixels. If `$pixels-per-inch` has the value 96, then 25% of a 6in width is 144px.

# \$procedure-step-numeration

Numeration for nested procedure steps.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }procedure-step-numeration              |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                 |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/functions.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:step-numeration()                       |

## Synopsis

```
$procedure-step-numeration := '1aiAI'
```

## Description

The `$procedure-step-numeration` parameter controls the numeration style of nested steps and substeps in a `procedure`. Steps at the top level will use the numeration style of the first character in `$procedure-step-numeration`, substeps at the second-level will use the numeration style of the second character in the string, etc. If the step depth exceeds the number of characters in the `$procedure-step-numeration`, selection “wraps back around” to the first character.

In other words, if the string is “1ai”: steps at the first, fourth, seventh, tenth, etc. depth will have arabic numeration. Steps at the second, fifth, eighth, eleventh, etc. depth will have lowercase alpha numeration, etc.

# \$productionset-lhs-rhs-separator

Separator in productions.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }productionset-lhs-rhs-separator          |
| Defined in: | param.xml                                   |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/programming.xml |

## Synopsis

\$productionset-lhs-rhs-separator := ':='

## Description

A `productionset` consists of non-terminals on the “left hand side” (LHS) and the productions that they expand to on the “right hand side” (RHS). When formatted, this string will be used as the separator between the left- and right-hand sides.

# \$profile-arch

Profile tokens for “arch”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-arch                         |
| Defined in: | param.xml                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/profile.xml |

## Synopsis

\$profile-arch := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator`) specified for `$profile-arch` are matched against the values in the `arch` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-audience

Profile tokens for “audience”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-audience                     |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$profile-audience := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator`) specified for `$profile-audience` are matched against the values in the `audience` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-condition

Profile tokens for “condition”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-condition                    |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$profile-condition := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator`) specified for `$profile-condition` are matched against the values in the `condition` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.



# \$profile-conformance

Profile tokens for “conformance”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-conformance                  |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$profile-conformance := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator`) specified for `$profile-conformance` are matched against the values in the `conformance` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-lang

Profile tokens for “xml:lang”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-lang                         |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$profile-lang := "`

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator` ) specified for `$profile-lang` are matched against the values in the `xml:lang` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-os

Profile tokens for “os”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-os                           |
| Defined in: | param.xml                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/profile.xml |

## Synopsis

\$profile-os := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator`) specified for `$profile-os` are matched against the values in the `os` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-outputformat

Profile tokens for “outputformat”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-outputformat                 |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$profile-outputformat := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator` ) specified for `$profile-outputformat` are matched against the values in the `outputformat` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-revision

Profile tokens for “revision”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-revision                     |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$profile-revision := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator`) specified for `$profile-revision` are matched against the values in the `revision` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-revisionflag

Profile tokens for “revisionflag”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-revisionflag                 |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$profile-revisionflag := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator` ) specified for `$profile-revisionflag` are matched against the values in the `revisionflag` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-role

Profile tokens for “role”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-role                         |
| Defined in: | param.xml                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/profile.xml |

## Synopsis

\$profile-role := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator`) specified for `$profile-role` are matched against the values in the `role` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-security

Profile tokens for “security”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-security                     |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$profile-security := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator` ) specified for `$profile-security` are matched against the values in the `security` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.



# \$profile-separator

The profile separator character.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-separator                    |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$profile-separator := ';'`

## Description

The profiling parameters (and the profiling attributes) are strings. Profiling operates on sets of tokens. The strings in each case are divided into tokens by separating them at the `$profile-separator` character. Common values for separator include “;” and “ ” (space). See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-userlevel

Profile tokens for “userlevel”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-userlevel                    |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$profile-userlevel := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator`) specified for `$profile-userlevel` are matched against the values in the `userlevel` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-vendor

Profile tokens for “vendor”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-vendor                       |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/profile.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$profile-vendor := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator`) specified for `$profile-vendor` are matched against the values in the `vendor` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$profile-wordsizes

Profile tokens for “wordsizes”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }profile-wordsizes                    |
| Defined in: | param.xml                               |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/profile.xml |

## Synopsis

\$profile-wordsizes := "

## Description

The tokens (separated by `$profile-separator`) specified for `$profile-wordsizes` are matched against the values in the `wordsizes` attribute. See *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*.

# \$theme-picker

Allow users to select themes?

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }theme-picker              |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                    |
| Used in:    | main.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$theme-picker as xs:string := 'false'
```

## Description

If this parameter is true, a JavaScript “theme picker” will be included in the document. This is provided through a “hamburger menu” in the upper-right corner. Given that one of the ostensible goals of providing themes is accessibility, it’s somewhat ironic that this feature is not especially accessible. Suggestions welcome.

# \$transclusion-prefix-separator

Transclusion separator.

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }transclusion-prefix-separator |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                        |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, drivers.xsl  |
| Used by:    | t:preprocess                     |

## Synopsis

```
$transclusion-prefix-separator := '---'
```

## Description

These stylesheets attempt to implement *Transclusion*. This parameter provides the separator for auto-generated prefixes.

# \$qandadiv-default-toc

Generate a table-of-contents for `qandadiv` elements?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }qandadiv-default-toc                |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                              |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/blocks.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$qandadiv-default-toc := $qandaset-default-toc`

## Description

If this parameter is true, by default a table-of-contents will be generated at the beginning of each `qandadiv`.

# \$qandaset-default-label

The default label for `qandaset` elements.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{qandaset-default-label}</code>   |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/titles.xml</code> , <code>modules/xref.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

```
$qandaset-default-label := 'number'
```

## Description

Question and answers can be rendered with a few different labeling styles. This parameter selects the default style.



# \$qandaset-default-toc

Generate a table-of-contents for `qandaset` elements?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }qandaset-default-toc</code>   |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>   |
| Used in:    | <code>param.xml</code> , <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/blocks.xml</code> |
| Used by:    | <code>\$qandadiv-default-toc</code>  |

## Synopsis

`$qandaset-default-toc := 'true'`

## Description

If this parameter is true, by default a table-of-contents will be generated at the beginning of each `qandaset`.

# \$relax-ng-grammar

Validation grammar.

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }relax-ng-grammar             |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                       |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, drivers.xsl |
| Used by:    | t:preprocess                    |

## Synopsis

\$relax-ng-grammar as xs:string? := ()

## Description

If `$relax-ng-grammar` is provided, then the last step of preprocessing the source document will be to validate it against the provided grammar. This can be useful if, for example, the `$local-conventions` parameter has been used. Validation is the last step of the `t:preprocess` template.

# \$refentry-generate-name

Use “Name” as the title of a `refentry` .

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }refentry-generate-name</code>                              |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xsl</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xsl</code> , <code>modules/refentry.xsl</code> |

## Synopsis

`$refentry-generate-name := true()`

## Description

If `$refentry-generate-name` is true, the title of the refentry page will be the word “Name”. Otherwise it will be the title of the subject of the reference page. Generally, exactly one of `$refentry-generate-name` or `$refentry-generate-title` should be true.

# \$refentry-generate-title

Use the subject of the page as the title of a `refentry` .

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }refentry-generate-title               |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/refentry.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$refentry-generate-title := true()`

## Description

If `$refentry-generate-title` is true, the title of the refentry page will be the subject of the page (the `refentrytitle` , `refdescriptor` , or the first `refname` ). Generally, exactly one of `$refentry-generate-name` or `$refentry-generate-title` should be true.

# \$resource-base-uri

Base URI of additional resources.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }resource-base-uri   |
| Defined in: | param.xsl  |
| Used in:    | main.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl, modules/head.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:highlight-js-head-elements, \$v:prism-js-head-elements           |

## Synopsis

`$resource-base-uri := './'`

## Description

Web pages rely on additional resources (CSS, JavaScript, etc.) to render properly. The `$resource-base-uri` is used as the base URI for these resources.

# \$revhistory-style

Rendering style for `revhistory` elements.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { <code>revhistory-style</code> }                                 |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xsl</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xsl</code> , <code>modules/blocks.xsl</code> |

## Synopsis

`$revhistory-style := 'table'`

## Description

The `revhistory` element can be rendered as a list or a table. If `$revhistory-style` is “`table`”, it will be rendered using the tabular style, otherwise it will be rendered using the list style.

*Example 1.1, An example of char alignment* shows an example of a `revhistory` element.

```
<revhistory>
  <revision>
    <revnumber>1.0.0</revnumber>
    <date>2020-07-27</date>
    <author>
      <personname>Norman Tovey-Walsh</personname>
    </author>
    <revdescription>
      <para>Version 1.0.0 released.</para>
    </revdescription>
  </revision>
  <revision>
    <revnumber>0.0.1</revnumber>
    <date>2020-05-08T06:24:00Z</date>
```

```

<author>
  <personname>Norman Tovey-Walsh</personname>
</author>
<revremark>Development begins.</revremark>
</revision>
</revhistory>

```

**Example 1.1 An example of char alignment**

It is shown rendered as a table in *Figure 1.1, An example of `revhistory` rendered as a table.*

| Revision History |                      |                    |                         |
|------------------|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1.0.0            | 27 Jul 2020          | Norman Tovey-Walsh | Version 1.0.0 released. |
| 0.0.1            | 06:24<br>08 May 2020 | Norman Tovey-Walsh | Development begins.     |

**Figure 1.1 An example of `revhistory` rendered as a table**

The same `revhistory` is shown rendered as a list in *Figure 1.2, An example of `revhistory` rendered as a list.*

- | Revision History   |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.0.0, 27 Jul 2020, Norman Tovey-Walsh<br/>Version 1.0.0 released.</li> <li>0.0.1, 06:24 08 May 2020, Norman Tovey-Walsh<br/>Development begins.</li> </ul> |  |  |  |

**Figure 1.2 An example of `revhistory` rendered as a list**

The default style specified by `$revhistory-style` can be overridden on a case-by-case basis with the `db` processing instruction using the `revhistory-style` pseudo-attribute.

# \$section-numbers

Are sections numbered?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }section-numbers</code>                                   |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/titles.xml</code> |
| Used by:    | <code>\$v:title-properties</code>                                 |

## Synopsis

`$section-numbers as xs:string := '1'`

## Description

If `$section-numbers` is true, sections that do not have an explicit label will be labeled with their section number.

See also `$division-numbers-inherit` , `$section-numbers-inherit` , and `$v:title-properties` .



# \$section-numbers-inherit

Include ancestor section labels?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }section-numbers-inherit             |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                              |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/titles.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:title-properties                   |

## Synopsis

```
$section-numbers-inherit := 'true'
```

## Description

If true, section labels will be prefixed with the label of their ancestor sections. In other words, third subsection in the second section of a chapter be labeled “2.3” if this is true and simply “3” if it’s false.

See also `$component-numbers-inherit` , `$division-numbers-inherit` , and `$v:title-properties` .

# `$section-toc-depth`

Depth of sections in the table of contents.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }section-toc-depth</code>                        |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>                                   |
| Used in:    | <code>param.xml</code> , <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

`$section-toc-depth := 'unbounded'`

## Description

When generating a Table of Contents, the `$section-toc-depth` determines the maximum depth of section to include. See also `$generate-toc` and `$generate-nested-toc`.

The `$section-toc-depth` should be a positive integer or the token `unbounded` to indicate arbitrary depth.

# \$segmentedlist-style

Choose segmented list presentation style.

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }segmentedlist-style                |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/lists.xsl |

## Synopsis

\$segmentedlist-style := 'table'

## Description

Segmented lists can be presented in two different ways: as lists or tables. The default is determined by `$segmentedlist-style` which must be either “list” or “table”.

Consider the following `segmentedlist` of (some of) the US states and their capitals:

```
1  <segmentedlist>
   <segtitle>State</segtitle>
   <segtitle>Capital</segtitle>
   <seglistitem>
5   <seg>Alabama</seg>
   <seg>Montgomery</seg>
   </seglistitem>
   <seglistitem>
   <seg>Alaska</seg>
10  <seg>Anchorage</seg>
   </seglistitem>
   <seglistitem>
   <seg>Arkansas</seg>
   <seg>Little Rock</seg>
15  </seglistitem>
```

</segmentedlist>

This can be rendered as a table, as shown in *Figure 1.1, Segmented list formatted as a table*:

| State    | Capital     |
|----------|-------------|
| Alabama  | Montgomery  |
| Alaska   | Anchorage   |
| Arkansas | Little Rock |

**Figure 1.1 Segmented list formatted as a table**

Or as a list, as shown in *Figure 1.2, Segmented list formatted as a list*:

**State:** Alabama  
**Capital:** Montgomery  
**State:** Alaska  
**Capital:** Anchorage  
**State:** Arkansas  
**Capital:** Little Rock

**Figure 1.2 Segmented list formatted as a list**

The style can be selected on a per-list bases with the `db` processing instruction using the `segmentedlist-style` pseudo-attribute. A `table-summary` pseudo-attribute is also provided for the table summary in tabular presentations.

# \$show-remarks

Show `remark` elements?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{show-remarks}</code>                                       |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xsl</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xsl</code> , <code>modules/blocks.xsl</code> |

## Synopsis

```
$show-remarks := 'false'
```

## Description

The `remark` element is useful for editorial comments and other notes that are not intended to appear in the final publication. If `$show-remarks` is true, then they will be included in the transformed result. Otherwise, they are omitted.

# \$sidebar-as-aside

Render `sidebar` as an `aside` ?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | <code>{}</code> sidebar-as-aside       |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                              |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/blocks.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$sidebar-as-aside := false()`

## Description

The HTML `aside` element has specific semantics. Whether or not those semantics are consistent with the way `sidebar` is used in your DocBook documents is an open question. If `$sidebar-as-aside` is true, `sidebar` elements will be rendered as HTML `aside` elements, otherwise they will be rendered as `div` elements.

# \$sort-collation

Sorting collation.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }sort-collation                        |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/glossary.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$sort-collation := 'http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/collation/html-ascii-case-insensitive'`

## Description

When items (the terms in a `glossary`, for example) are sorted, this collation is used.

# \$table-accessibility

Accessibility settings for tables.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { }table-accessibility                    |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                 |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/tablecals.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$table-accessibility as xs:string* := ('summary', 'details')`

## Description

The `$table-accessibility` parameter determines how accessibility features are added to CALS tables<sup>1</sup>.

The value of this parameter is a list of strings. If the list contains:

summary

A `summary` attribute will be added to the table if an `alt` element or a `textobject` containing a single `phrase` is available.

details

A `details` element will be added if there is a `textobject` containing anything other than a single `phrase` available.

The list may contain either or both values. If other values are present, they are ignored.

See *Example 1.1, An example of table accessibility*.

```
<table frame="all">
  <title>Square numbers</title>
  <alt>The first four whole numbers
```

---

<sup>1</sup> This parameter does not apply to HTML tables because the HTML table model supports these features directly.



and their squares.</alt>

<textobject>

<para>This table shows the first four whole numbers and their squares. (The square of a number is that number times itself.)

</para>

</textobject>

<tgroup cols="2" colsep="1" rowsep="1">

<thead>

<row>

<entry>

<inlineequation>

<mathphrase>n</mathphrase>

</inlineequation>

</entry>

<entry>

<inlineequation>

<mathphrase>n<superscript>2</superscript>

</mathphrase>

</inlineequation>

</entry>

</row>

</thead>

<tbody>

<row>

<entry>1</entry>

<entry>1</entry>

</row>

<row>

<entry>2</entry>

<entry>4</entry>

</row>

<row>

```

<entry>3</entry>
<entry>9</entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry>4</entry>
<entry>16</entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</table>

```

**Example 1.1 An example of table accessibility**

One possible rendering of such an example:

**Table 1.1 Square numbers**

| n | n <sup>2</sup> |
|---|----------------|
| 1 | 1              |
| 2 | 4              |
| 3 | 9              |
| 4 | 16             |

Inspection of the HTML will reveal that the `summary` attribute is present on the element that wraps the table and a `details` element precedes it. These may or may not be rendered by your user agent depending on its accessibility features and settings.

See also `$mediaobject-accessibility`.

# \$table-footnote-numeration

How are footnotes numbered in tables?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{table-footnote-numeration}</code>  |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/footnotes.xml</code> , <code>modules/chunk-cleanup.xml</code> |

## Synopsis

`$table-footnote-numeration := ('a')`

## Description

There are different styles of footnote numeration. This parameter contains a list of the symbols that should be used to mark footnotes in tables. If there could be more footnotes than symbols in the list, the last symbol in the list must be a character suitable for formatting numbers. See `$footnote-numeration`.

Footnote number begins with the first symbol in each table.

# \$use-docbook-css

Create links to standard DocBook CSS stylesheets?

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }use-docbook-css                   |
| Defined in: | param.xml                            |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xml, modules/head.xml |

## Synopsis

`$use-docbook-css := 'true'`

## Description

If this parameter is true, then the output will contain links to the standard DocBook CSS stylesheets:

```
1 <link href="{ $resource-base-uri}css/docbook.css"
  rel="stylesheet"/>
  <link href="{ $resource-base-uri}css/docbook-screen.css"
    rel="stylesheet" media="screen"/>
5 <link href="{ $resource-base-uri}css/docbook-page-setup.css"
  rel="stylesheet" media="print"/>
  <link href="{ $resource-base-uri}css/docbook-paged.css"
    rel="stylesheet" media="print"/>
```

You can quickly disable all of these links by setting this parameter to false. There are a number of other stylesheets that are only conditionally included, see `$verbatim-syntax-highlight-css`, `$persistent-toc-css`, and `$oxy-markup-css`. User defined stylesheets are added with `$user-css-links`.

# \$user-css-links

A list of user-defined CSS stylesheets.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }user-css-links                        |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$user-css-links := ()`

## Description

This parameter is a space separated list of CSS stylesheets. Each will be added to the output after the standard stylesheets.

# \$variablelist-termlength-threshold

Threshold value for considering `varlistentry` terms “long”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | <code>{ }variablelist-termlength-threshold</code>                     |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xsl</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xsl</code> , <code>modules/attributes.xsl</code> |

## Synopsis

```
$variablelist-termlength-threshold := 20
```

## Description

If the sum of the lengths of the `term` elements in a `varlistentry` exceeds this threshold, the variable list will have a “`long`” class. This can be used in CSS or in other downstream processing to decide whether or not the terms and their corresponding list items should be aligned side-by-side.

The length computation is just the number of characters. No attempt is made to adjust for wide or narrow characters.

# \$verbatim-callouts

A list determining how callouts are processed.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }verbatim-callouts                     |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-callouts                    |

## Synopsis

\$verbatim-callouts as xs:string := 'linecolumn lines lineranges-first'

## Description

The `$verbatim-callouts` parameter is a space separated list of token values. These token values determine which kinds of callouts in a `programlistingco` or `screenco` will be processed and how.

### linecolumn

If “`linecolumn`” appears in the list then callouts that have a `units` attribute of `linecolumn` and specify both a line and column will be processed. A callout marker will be placed on the line and before the column indicated. Additional lines and columns will be added to the listing if necessary.

### lines

If “`lines`” appears in the list then callouts that have a `units` attribute of `linecolumn` and specify only a line will be processed. A callout marker will be placed on the line and before the `$callout-default-column`.

### lineranges-first

If “`lineranges-first`” appears in the list then callouts that have a `units` attribute of `linerange` will be processed. A callout marker will be placed on the first line and before the `$callout-default-column`.

Only one of `lineranges-first` and `lineranges-all` should be specified.

lineranges-all

If “lineranges-first” appears in the list then callouts that have a units attribute of linerange will be processed. A callout marker will be placed on every line in the range before the \$callout-default-column.

Only one of lineranges-first and lineranges-all should be specified.

There is no support for area s with a units value of “calspair” or “linecolumnpair”. They are always ignored.



# \$verbatim-line-style

List of verbatim elements to be rendered in the line style.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }verbatim-line-style                   |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-line-style                  |

## Synopsis

\$verbatim-line-style := 'programlisting programlistingco screen screenco synopsis'

## Description

This parameter is a space-separated list of element names (local names). Verbatim elements that appear in this list will be formatted using the line style by default. For a discussion of verbatim elements and styles, see *Section 4.3, Verbatim styles*.

# \$verbatim-number-every-nth

Line numbering frequency.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Parameter:  | { <code>verbatim-number-every-nth</code> }                          |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xml</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xml</code> , <code>modules/variable.xml</code> |
| Used by:    | <code>\$v:verbatim-number-every-nth</code>                          |

## Synopsis

`$verbatim-number-every-nth := 5`

## Description

When formatting verbatim environments with line numbers, every `$verbatim-number-every-nth` line is numbered.

# \$verbatim-number-first-line

Number the first line?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }verbatim-number-first-line            |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-number-first-line           |

## Synopsis

```
$verbatim-number-first-line := 'true'
```

## Description

When formatting verbatim environments with line numbers, if `$verbatim-number-first-line` line is true, the first line will be numbered even it isn't one of the `$verbatim-number-every-nth` lines.

# \$verbatim-number-minlines

Shortest listing to number.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }verbatim-number-minlines              |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-number-minlines             |

## Synopsis

```
$verbatim-number-minlines := '5'
```

## Description

When formatting verbatim environments with line numbers, environments less than `$verbatim-number-minlines` in length will not be numbered.

# \$verbatim-numbered-elements

Verbatim environments that should be numbered.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }verbatim-numbered-elements            |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-numbered-elements           |

## Synopsis

`$verbatim-numbered-elements := 'programlisting programlistingco'`

## Description

This parameter is a space-separated list of element names (local names). Verbatim elements that appear in this list will be formatted with line numbers. For a discussion of verbatim elements and styles, see *Section 4.3, Verbatim styles*.

# \$verbatim-plain-style

List of verbatim elements to be rendered in the plain style.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }verbatim-plain-style                  |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-plain-style                 |

## Synopsis

`$verbatim-plain-style as xs:string := 'address literallayout funcsynopsisinfo classsynopsisinfo'`

## Description

This parameter is a space-separated list of element names (local names). Verbatim elements that appear in this list will be formatted using the plain style by default. For a discussion of verbatim elements and styles, see *Section 4.3, Verbatim styles*.

See also `$v:verbatim-plain-style`.

# \$verbatim-space

The space character to use when padding verbatim lines.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }verbatim-space                        |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-space                       |

## Synopsis

\$verbatim-space := ' '

## Description

When a verbatim line has to be padded in order to get a callout to appear in the correct column, this character will be used as the padding character. For a discussion of verbatim elements and styles, see *Section 4.3, Verbatim styles*.

# \$verbatim-style-default

The default verbatim style.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }verbatim-style-default                |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/verbatim.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$verbatim-style-default := 'lines'
```

## Description

The default verbatim style for verbatim environments that do not specify a style explicitly. For a discussion of verbatim elements and styles, see *Section 4.3, Verbatim styles*.



# \$verbatim-syntax-highlight-css

Stylesheet for syntax highlighting.

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }verbatim-syntax-highlight-css     |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                            |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/head.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$verbatim-syntax-highlight-css := 'css/pygments.css'
```

## Description

If the `$verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages` parameter is non-empty, then this stylesheet will be linked from the HTML document. The purpose of this stylesheet is to provide styling (fonts, colors, etc.) for syntax highlighted verbatim listings.

# \$verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages

Languages for which syntax highlighting should be performed.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages   |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/variable.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages  |

## Synopsis

```
$verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages := 'python perl html xml xslt xquery javascript json'
```

## Description

This parameter is a space-separated list of programming languages. If the Pygments (<https://pygments.org/>) syntax highlighter is available, the stylesheets can apply syntax highlighting to program listings. If the program listing language (as specified in the `language` attribute) appears in the list of `$verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages`, syntax highlighting will be attempted.

### Note



Syntax highlighting is incompatible with inline markup in the program listing; the embedded markup will be ignored.

The examples in this guide show syntax highlighting applied to XML.

See also `$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-options` and `$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-pygments-options`.

# \$verbatim-syntax-highlighter

Selects the syntax highlighter.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { <code>verbatim-syntax-highlighter</code> }   |
| Defined in: | <code>param.xsl</code>   |
| Used in:    | <code>parameter-maps.xsl</code> , <code>modules/head.xsl</code> , <code>modules/verbatim.xsl</code>        |
| Used by:    | <code>f:verbatim-style()</code> , <code>f:verbatim-highlight()</code> , <code>f:verbatim-numbered()</code> |

## Synopsis

```
$verbatim-syntax-highlighter as xs:string := 'pygments'
```

## Description

This parameter specifies the syntax highlighter to use. Most of the parameters related to syntax highlighting only work if the “`pygments`” highlighter is selected. However, that requires running an external process which might not be available and which, even if it is available, has an impact on performance. Using Pygments has the advantage that the stylesheets have more control over the process and it is available both for online and paged media formats.

The alternative to running an external program is to use JavaScript to highlight the listing in the browser. This is faster at formatting time, but limits syntax highlighting to those environments where JavaScript is available.

The following options are supported:

`pygments`

This is the default highlighter.

`highlight.js`

Uses the *highlight.js* JavaScript library to perform syntax highlighting. The `$highlight-js-head-elements` variable determines what CSS stylesheets and JavaScript libraries are loaded for this option.

prism

Uses the *Prism* JavaScript library to perform syntax highlighting. The `$prism-js-head-elements` variable determines what CSS stylesheets and JavaScript libraries are loaded for this option.

none

Disables syntax highlighting but also suppresses messages about features that are not available because syntax highlighting is disabled.

# \$verbatim-trim-trailing-blank-lines

Trim trailing blank lines off verbatim environments?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Parameter:  | { }verbatim-trim-trailing-blank-lines    |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/verbatim.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:verbatim-trim-trailing()               |

## Synopsis

```
$verbatim-trim-trailing-blank-lines := 'true'
```

## Description

Trailing blank lines can be introduced into verbatim environments in a number of ways. Transcluded text files may have trailing blank lines, for example, and authors often put a newline before the closing tag of an environment.

This can produce spurious looking listings in the documentation. If trailing newlines aren't significant, setting `$verbatim-trim-trailing-blank-lines` will cause the stylesheets to trim blank (that is, entirely empty) lines from the end of verbatim environments.

# \$xlink-icon-closed

Icon indicating hidden XLink links.

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | {xlink-icon-closed           |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                    |
| Used in:    | main.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$xlink-icon-closed := ()`

## Description

If the JavaScript presentation of extended XLinks is used, this icon marks the place where a multi-ended link can be revealed. The default icon is “►” (&#x25B6;). See also:

`$xlink-icon-open` .

# \$xlink-icon-open

XLink CSS.

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }xlink-icon-open           |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                    |
| Used in:    | main.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$xlink-icon-open := ()`

## Description

If the JavaScript presentation of extended XLinks is used, this icon marks the place where a multi-ended link has been revealed. The default icon is “▼” (✴).

### Note



The default icons are quite large compared to running text of the same size. To compensate, they're styled at a `font-size` of 70%. If you select different icons, you may need to adjust the `font-size` associated with the `xlink-arc-list` class.

# \$xlink-js

Script to support extended XLinks.

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }xlink-js                  |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                    |
| Used in:    | main.xsl, parameter-maps.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
$xlink-js := 'js/xlink.js'
```

## Description

If the extended XLinks appear in the document, a link to this script will be added to the document. This script must contain the JavaScript necessary to support rendering extended XLinks.



# \$xlink-style

Presentation style for XLink extended links.

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | {xlink-style                          |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/xlink.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:xlink-style()                       |

## Synopsis

`$xlink-style := 'document'`

## Description

The stylesheets support XLink extended links. Extended links make it possible to have one-to-many links. That is, a single link such as *DocBook* [*DocBook.org* (<https://docbook.org/>), *DocBook on Wikipedia* (<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/DocBook>)] may point to more than one target. Two styles are supported: “`inline`” which renders a link to each target inline after the originating link, and “`javascript`” which uses JavaScript to create a popup menu for the links.

The XLink style for a document applies to the entire document, you cannot specify inline presentation in some cases and JavaScript presentation in others. However, if you specify “`document`” as the value for `$xlink-style`, then a `db` processing instruction in the document’s top-level `info` element can be used to control the presentation. Specify the style in the `xlink-style` pseudo-attribute.

If the `document` style is selected and no processing instruction specifying a style exists, the `$xlink-style-default` style will be selected.

# \$xlink-style-default

Default XLink style.

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }xlink-style-default                |
| Defined in: | param.xsl                             |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl, modules/xlink.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:xlink-style()                       |

## Synopsis

`$xlink-style-default := 'inline'`

## Description

Specifies the default XLink style if “`document`” is specified for the `$xlink-style` and no processing instruction specifying a style exists.

Must be either “`inline`” or “`javascript`”.

# \$xspec

Are we running XSpec tests?

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| Parameter:  | { }xspec           |
| Defined in: | param.xsl          |
| Used in:    | parameter-maps.xsl |

## Synopsis

`$xspec as xs:string := 'false'`

## Description

This parameter is only true if the stylesheets are running in the context of the XSpec test harness. This allows tests to be crafted such that normal variations (Saxon HE vs. EE, the version of the stylesheets, or the current time, for example) don't introduce spurious differences in the results, causing tests to fail.



## II. Variables reference

# \$v:admonition-icons

Admonition icons.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}admonition-icons |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | modules/admonitions.xsl                                   |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:admonition-icons">
  <tip>✎</tip>
  <note>①</note>
  <important>⚠</important>
  <caution>⚠</caution>
  <warning>●</warning>
  <danger>⚡</danger>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

These are the icons that will be presented next to admonitions. They're single Unicode characters in the default distribution, but they can be replaced by graphics or other markup.

# \$arg-choice-def-close-str, ...

Punctuation marks used in formatting `cmdsynopsis` .

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-choice-def-close-str   |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-choice-def-open-str    |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-choice-opt-close-str   |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-choice-opt-open-str    |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-choice-plain-close-str |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-choice-plain-open-str  |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-choice-req-close-str   |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-choice-req-open-str    |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-or-sep                 |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-rep-def-str            |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-rep-norepeat-str       |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}arg-rep-repeat-str         |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl (12)   |
| Used in:    | modules/programming.xsl   |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-choice-opt-open-str">  
  <span class="cmdpunct">[</span>  
</xsl:variable>
```

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-choice-opt-close-str">  
  <span class="cmdpunct">]</span>  
</xsl:variable>
```

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-choice-req-open-str">  
  <span class="cmdpunct">{</span>  
</xsl:variable>
```

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-choice-req-close-str">  
  <span class="cmdpunct">}</span>
```

```
</xsl:variable>
```

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-choice-plain-open-str">  
  <xsl:text/>  
</xsl:variable>
```

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-choice-plain-close-str">  
  <xsl:text/>  
</xsl:variable>
```

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-choice-def-open-str">  
  <span class="cmdpunct">[</span>  
</xsl:variable>
```

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-choice-def-close-str">  
  <span class="cmdpunct">]</span>  
</xsl:variable>
```

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-rep-repeat-str">  
  <span class="cmdpunct">...</span>  
</xsl:variable>
```

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-rep-norepeat-str">  
  <xsl:text/>  
</xsl:variable>
```

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-rep-def-str">  
  <xsl:text/>  
</xsl:variable>
```

```
<xsl:variable name="v:arg-or-sep">  
  <span class="cmdpunct"> | </span>  
</xsl:variable>
```



# Description

The `cmdsynopsis` element is used to model the syntax of command line interfaces. Broadly, a command line interface consists of a command followed by a variety of options. These options can be optional or required and may or may not be repeatable.

User expectations about how these should be formatted vary by platform and publisher. The `$v:arg-...` variables are designed to make it easy to adapt to many common forms of presentation. Each contains (usually) a single character used as a delimiter:

| Variable                                    | Use in a synopsis                          | Default          |
|---|--|------------------|
| <code>\$v:arg-choice-def-close-str</code>   | Follows a default option                   | <code>]</code>   |
| <code>\$v:arg-choice-def-open-str</code>    | Precedes a default option                  | <code>[</code>   |
| <code>\$v:arg-choice-opt-close-str</code>   | Follows an optional option                 | <code>]</code>   |
| <code>\$v:arg-choice-opt-open-str</code>    | Precedes an optional option                | <code>[</code>   |
| <code>\$v:arg-choice-plain-close-str</code> | Follows an option identified as “plain”    | (empty string)   |
| <code>\$v:arg-choice-plain-open-str</code>  | Precedes an option identified as “plain”   | (empty string)   |
| <code>\$v:arg-choice-req-close-str</code>   | Follows a required option                  | <code>}</code>   |
| <code>\$v:arg-choice-req-open-str</code>    | Precedes a required option                 | <code>{</code>   |
| <code>\$v:arg-or-sep</code>                 | Separator between options in an “or” group | <code> </code>   |
| <code>\$v:arg-rep-def-str</code>            | Identifies a repeatable default option     | (empty string)   |
| <code>\$v:arg-rep-norepeat-str</code>       | Identifies a non-repeatable option         | (empty string)   |
| <code>\$v:arg-rep-repeat-str</code>         | Identifies an explicitly repeatable option | <code>...</code> |

<sup>1</sup>

A contrived `cmdsynopsis` appears in *Example 1.1, An example of a `cmdsynopsis`*.

```
<cmdsynopsis>
  <command>command</command>
  <arg choice="plain">
    <option>--path <replaceable>PATH</replaceable>
  </option>
</arg>
<arg>-opt</arg>
<arg choice="req">-req</arg>
```

<sup>1</sup> Each of the default characters is placed in an HTML `span` with the class “`cmdpunct`”.

```
<arg rep="repeat">-D<replaceable>name</replaceable>
</arg>
<group>
  <arg choice="plain">-M</arg>
  <arg choice="plain">-MD</arg>
</group>
</cmdsynopsis>
```

**Example 1.1** An example of a `cmdsynopsis`

One possible rendering of such a synopsis:

```
command --path PATH [-opt] {-req} [-Dname...] [-M | -MD]
```

# \$v:annotation-close

Annotation close button.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}annotation-close |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | main.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:annotation-close"
  as="element()">
  <span>×</span>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

The contents of this variable will be rendered as the “close” icon for popup annotations.

# \$v:bridgehead-map

Maps `bridgehead` `renderas` values.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}bridgehead-map |
| Defined in: | modules/sections.xsl                                    |
| Used in:    | modules/sections.xsl                                    |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:bridgehead-map"
  as="map(*)">
  <xsl:map>
    <xsl:map-entry key="sect1" select="h2"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="sect2" select="h3"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="sect3" select="h4"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="sect4" select="h5"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="sect5" select="h5"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="sect6" select="h5"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="block" select="div"/>
  </xsl:map>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

The `bridgehead` element allows the author to insert a heading without regard to the logical structure of the document. This variable controls how the values provided in the `renderas` attribute map to HTML. If there is no mapping for the specified rendering, it is rendered as a `div`.

# \$v:chunk

Are we chunking on this run?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}chunk                                    |
| Defined in: | param.xsl   |
| Used in:    | param.xsl, modules/chunk.xsl, modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl, modules/chunk-output.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$chunk-output-base-uri, f:chunk()  |

## Synopsis

`$v:chunk as xs:boolean := not(normalize-space($chunk) = '')`

## Description

If `$v:chunk` is true, then the stylesheets are producing chunked output. See *Section 2.6*, “*Chunked*” output.

# \$v:chunk-filter-namespaces

Namespace context for chunking expressions.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}chunk-filter-namespaces |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/chunk.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:chunk-filter-namespaces"
  as="namespace-node(*)">
  <xsl:namespace name="db" select="'http://docbook.org/ns/docbook'"/>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

When the `$chunk-include` and `$chunk-exclude` expressions are evaluated, the namespace bindings in this variable will be in-scope.

# `$v:chunk-renumber-footnotes`

Renumber footnotes when chunking?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | <code>{http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}chunk-renumber-footnotes</code> |
| Defined in: | <code>modules/variable.xsl</code>  |
| Used in:    | <code>modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl</code>   |

## Synopsis

`$v:chunk-renumber-footnotes` as `xs:boolean` := `f:is-true($chunk-renumber-footnotes)`

## Description

Footnotes are generally numbered (or otherwise marked, see `$footnote-numeration`) sequentially throughout a document. If the document is being broken into chunks, it may seem odd if the only footnote in a chunk is labeled “5”. If `$v:chunk-renumber-footnotes` is true, the stylesheets will attempt to renumber footnotes in each chunk so that they begin at the first mark in each chunk.

# \$err:DYNAMIC-PROFILE-EVAL-ERROR

Error evaluating dynamic profile expression.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}DYNAMIC-PROFILE-EVAL-ERROR |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/profile.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
$dbe:DYNAMIC-PROFILE-EVAL-ERROR := xs:QName('dbe:DYNAMIC-PROFILE-EVAL-ERROR')
```

## Description

This error is raised if the variable referenced in a dynamic profile expression (see *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*) is not available and the `$dynamic-profile-error` configuration is “`error`”.



# \$err:DYNAMIC-PROFILE-SYNTAX-ERROR

Internal error processing dynamic profiles.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}DYNAMIC-PROFILE-SYNTAX-ERROR |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/profile.xsl  |

## Synopsis

\$dbe:DYNAMIC-PROFILE-SYNTAX-ERROR := xs:QName('dbe:DYNAMIC-PROFILE-SYNTAX-E

## Description

This is an internal error. It indicates that the syntax of a dynamic profiling expression was unrecognized. Since dynamic profiling should only be applied to expressions that *have* been recognized, this error should never happen.

# \$err:INTERNAL-HIGHLIGHT-ERROR

Internal error in syntax highlighting.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}INTERNAL-HIGHLIGHT-ERROR |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xsl   |
| Used in:    | highlight.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
$dbe:INTERNAL-HIGHLIGHT-ERROR := xs:QName('dbe:INTERNAL-HIGHLIGHT-ERROR')
```

## Description

This is an internal error that should never happen. It indicates that stylesheet processing of program listings attempted to use the syntax highlighter when the syntax highlighter was known to be unavailable. If you see this error, please file an issue (<https://github.com/docbook/xslTNG/issues>) for it.

# \$err:INTERNAL-RENUMBER-ERROR

Internal error in chunk formatting.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}INTERNAL-RENUMBER-ERROR |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl                                     |

## Synopsis

```
$dbe:INTERNAL-RENUMBER-ERROR := xs:QName('dbe:INTERNAL-RENUMBER-ERROR')
```

## Description

This is an internal error that should never happen. It indicates that stylesheet processing of footnotes during “chunking” has gone awry. If you see this error, please file an issue (<https://github.com/docbook/xslTNG/issues>) for it.

# \$err:INVALID-AREAREFS

Callout area refers to invalid target.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}INVALID-AREAREFS |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xsl                                     |
| Used in:    | modules/lists.xsl                                      |

## Synopsis

```
$dbe:INVALID-AREAREFS := xs:QName('dbe:INVALID-AREAREFS')
```

## Description

This error indicates that a `calloutlist` includes an ID/IDREF link to a callout, but the element identified by the ID is not an `areaset`, `area`, or `callout`.

This should (<https://github.com/docbook/docbook/issues/151>) be identified as a validation error by a Schematron rule.

# \$err:INVALID-CALS

CALS table is invalid.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}INVALID-CALS |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xsl                                 |
| Used in:    | modules/tablecals.xsl                              |

## Synopsis

\$dbe:INVALID-CALS := xs:QName('dbe:INVALID-CALS')

## Description

This error is raised if a CALS table is invalid. The following error conditions give rise to this error:

- The number of columns in the table exceeds the specified `cols` value on `tgroup`.
- There is a named reference to a `colspec` but no `colspec` with that name exists.
- There is a named reference to a `spanspec` but no `spanspec` with that name exists.

# \$err:INVALID-CONSTRAINT

Incorrect constraint reference.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}INVALID-CONSTRAINT |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xsl                                       |
| Used in:    | modules/programming.xsl                                  |

## Synopsis

```
$dbe:INVALID-CONSTRAINT := xs:QName('dbe:INVALID-CONSTRAINT')
```

## Description

This error is raised if a `constraint` link points to something other than a `constraintdef`.

This should (<https://github.com/docbook/docbook/issues/152>) be identified as a validation error by a Schematron rule.

# \$err:INVALID-DYNAMIC-PROFILE-ERROR

Invalid value specified for `$dynamic-profile-error` .

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}INVALID-DYNAMIC-PROFILE-ERROR |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/profile.xsl   |

## Synopsis

`$dbe:INVALID-DYNAMIC-PROFILE-ERROR := xs:QName('dbe:INVALID-DYNAMIC-PROFILE-E`

## Description

This error is raised if the value of `$dynamic-profile-error` is not a recognized value.

# \$err:INVALID-INJECT

Invalid callout area specification.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}INVALID-INJECT |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xsl                                   |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl                                 |

## Synopsis

```
$dbe:INVALID-INJECT := xs:QName('dbe:INVALID-INJECT')
```

## Description

This error is raised if a `programlistingco` or `screenco` contains invalid areas. This can arise from invalid markup, unsupported units in an area, or unparseable coordinates in an area.



# \$err:INVALID-NAME-STYLE

Invalid name style.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}INVALID-NAME-STYLE |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xsl                                       |
| Used in:    | modules/info.xsl   |
| Used by:    | t:person-name  |

## Synopsis

```
$dbe:INVALID-NAME-STYLE := xs:QName('dbe:INVALID-NAME-STYLE')
```

## Description

This error indicates that a request was made to format a personal name (see `t:person-name`) with an unknown style name.

# \$err:INVALID-PRODUCTIONRECAP

Incorrect production reference.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}INVALID-PRODUCTIONRECAP |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/programming.xsl                                       |

## Synopsis

`$dbe:INVALID-PRODUCTIONRECAP := xs:QName('dbe:INVALID-PRODUCTIONRECAP')`

## Description

This error is raised if a `productionrecap` link points to something other than a `production`.

This should (<https://github.com/docbook/docbook/issues/152>) be identified as a validation error by a Schematron rule.

# \$err:INVALID-TEMPLATE

Invalid template reference.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/errors}INVALID-TEMPLATE |
| Defined in: | modules/errors.xml                                     |
| Used in:    | modules/templates.xml                                  |

## Synopsis

```
$dbe:INVALID-TEMPLATE := xs:QName('dbe:INVALID-TEMPLATE')
```

## Description

This error is raised if a template reference names a template that does not exist.

# \$v:debug

Debugging flags.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook}debug                |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl, modules/chunk-output.xsl |
| Static:     | Yes   |

## Synopsis

```
$v:debug as xs:string* := tokenize($debug, '[\s]+') ! normalize-space(.)
```

## Description

The `$v:debug` variable contains a sequence of debugging flags. These are derived from tokenizing the `$debug` parameter value.

# \$v:dynamic-profile-variables

Names that can be used in dynamic profiling expressions.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}dynamic-profile-variables |
| Defined in: | modules/profile.xsl  |
| Used in:    | Not used.  |

## Synopsis

`$v:dynamic-profile-variables as map(xs:QName, item()*) := $vp:dynamic-parameters`

## Description

All of the variables that can be used in dynamic profiling (see *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*) must be in this map. The default value of this map includes all of the (dynamic) DocBook stylesheet parameters. If you add new parameters in a customization layer and you want to be able to use those values in dynamic profiling, you must update this variable.

# \$v:formal-object-title-placement

Placement of formal object titles.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}formal-object-title-placement |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/blocks.xsl   |

## Synopsis

```
$v:formal-object-title-placement as map(xs:string,xs:string) := fp:parse-key-value-pairs( tokenize($formal-object-title-placement, ' ' ) )
```

## Description

This variable, usually derived from `$formal-object-title-placement` is a map from element (local) names to placements. The placement is either “before” or “after”.

# \$v:highlight-js-head-elements

CSS and JavaScript to support highlight.js.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}highlight-js-head-elements |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/head.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:highlight-js-head-elements"
  as="element(*)">
  <link rel="stylesheet"
    href="{ $resource-base-uri }css/highlight-11.6.0.min.css"/>
  <script src="{ $resource-base-uri }js/highlight-11.6.0.min.js"/>
  <script>hljs.highlightAll();</script>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

If the “highlight.js” syntax highlighter is selected (see `$verbatim-syntax-highlighter`), these elements are added to the `head` element to load and configure the highlighter.

Starting with the *DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets* version 1.4.1, any `link` elements will be added to the `head` element *before* links to user-defined CSS files so that property overrides may be specified.

# `$v:image-nominal-height`

Nominal height of an image.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}image-nominal-height |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl   |

## Synopsis

```
$v:image-nominal-height := f:parse-length($image-nominal-height)
```

## Description

If the extension functions necessary to determine the intrinsic height of an image are unavailable, or if the height cannot be determined, this value will be used as the assumed intrinsic height of the image. This is generally the parsed value of `$image-nominal-height`.



# `$v:image-nominal-width`

Nominal width of an image.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | <code>{http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}image-nominal-width</code> |
| Defined in: | <code>modules/variable.xsl</code>   |
| Used in:    | <code>modules/objects.xsl</code>  |

## Synopsis

`$v:image-nominal-width := f:parse-length($image-nominal-width)`

## Description

If the extension functions necessary to determine the intrinsic width of an image are unavailable, or if the width cannot be determined, this value will be used as the assumed intrinsic width of the image. This is generally the parsed value of `$image-nominal-width`.

# \$v:invisible-characters

A list of characters that are invisible in verbatim environments.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables</a> }invisible-characters |
| Defined in: | modules/verbatim.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
$v:invisible-characters := (" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ")
```

## Description

When callouts are being inserted into a verbatim environment, the stylesheets must count the characters in each line in order to find the correct column. The characters in this list are considered invisible and do not increase the column count as they're passed.

# \$locales

Available locales.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}locales |
| Defined in: | modules/gentext.xsl                              |
| Used in:    | modules/gentext.xsl                              |

## Synopsis

```
$v:locales as xs:string+ := tokenize(normalize-space($vp:all-languages), '\s+')
```

## Description

This variable lists the locales that should be loaded. There needs to be a locale for every language that you use....

# \$v:mediaobject-input-base-uri

Base URI of images and other media in the XML sources.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}mediaobject-input-base-uri |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl   |
| Used by:    | f:resolve-object-uri()  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:mediaobject-input-base-uri"
  as="xs:string?">
  <xsl:message use-when="'mediaobject-uris' = $v:debug"
    select="'Mediaobject input base URI:',          if ($mediaobject-input-base-uri = "
  <xsl:sequence select="if ($mediaobject-input-base-uri = ")          then ()"
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

This value is calculated from the `$mediaobject-input-base-uri` parameter. If the parameter is the empty string, then this value is the empty sequence. Otherwise, this value is the absolute URI that results from resolving the value of the `$mediaobject-input-base-uri` parameter against the static base URI of the stylesheet.

# \$v:mediaobject-output-base-uri

Base URI of images and other media in the output.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}mediaobject-output-base-uri |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl  |
| Used by:    | f:resolve-object-uri()   |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:mediaobject-output-base-uri"
  as="xs:string?">
  <xsl:message use-when="'mediaobject-uris' = $v:debug"
    select="'Mediaobject output base URI:', if ($mediaobject-output-base-uri
  <xsl:sequence select="if ($mediaobject-output-base-uri = '') then ()
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

This value is calculated from the `$mediaobject-output-base-uri` parameter. If the parameter is the empty string, then this value is the empty sequence. Otherwise, this value is the value of the `$mediaobject-output-base-uri` parameter, which is assumed to be absolute. A trailing slash will be added to the parameter value if it is not present.

# \$v:nominal-page-width

The nominal page width.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}nominal-page-width |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/tablecals.xsl                                       |

## Synopsis

`$v:nominal-page-width := f:parse-length($nominal-page-width)`

## Description

To calculate the width of the columns in some complex CALS tables, the stylesheets need to know the page width. The `$nominal-page-width` is used for this value. It is generally the value of `$nominal-page-width` parsed as a length (see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*).

# \$v:olink-databases

External olink databases.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}olink-databases |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl                                     |
| Used in:    | modules/links.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:olink-databases"
  as="element(h:targetdb)*">
  <xsl:if test="normalize-space($olink-databases) != "">
    <xsl:for-each select="tokenize($olink-databases, ',\s*) ! normalize-space(.)">
      <xsl:variable name="db" select="."/>
      <xsl:try>
        <xsl:variable name="olinkdb" select="doc($db)/h:targetdb"/>
        <xsl:if test="empty($olinkdb)">
          <xsl:message select="'No targets in olinkdb:', $db"/>
        </xsl:if>
        <xsl:sequence select="$olinkdb"/>
      <xsl:catch>
        <xsl:message select="'Failed to load olinkdb:', $db"/>
      </xsl:catch>
    </xsl:try>
  </xsl:for-each>
</xsl:if>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

The `$v:olink-databases` variable is usually derived from the `$olink-databases` parameter. It must contain a sequence of olink target databases.

# \$v:personal-name-styles

The list of known personal name styles.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}personal-name-styles |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/info.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
$v:personal-name-styles := ('first-last', 'last-first', 'FAMILY-given')
```

## Description

The stylesheets can format personal names in a variety of ways. This variable contains the list of known ways, see `t:person-name`.



# \$v:prism-js-head-elements

CSS and JavaScript to support Prism.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}prism-js-head-elements |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/head.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:prism-js-head-elements"
  as="element(*)">
  <link rel="stylesheet" href="{ $resource-base-uri }css/prism.css"/>
  <script src="{ $resource-base-uri }js/prism.js"/>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

If the “prism” syntax highlighter is selected (see `$verbatim-syntax-highlighter`), these elements are added to the `head` element to load and configure the highlighter.

Starting with the *DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets* version 1.4.1, any `link` elements will be added to the `head` element *before* links to user-defined CSS files so that property overrides may be specified.

# \$v:templates

Custom templates for title pages.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}templates |
| Defined in: | modules/templates.xsl                              |
| Used in:    | modules/templates.xsl                              |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:templates"
  as="document-node()">
  <xsl:document/>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

The stylesheets use templates, as described in *Section 4.5, Templates*, to determine the formatting of title pages<sup>1</sup>. Any templates provided in `$v:templates` will be used preferentially to whatever builtin templates exist.

---

<sup>1</sup> The term “title pages” should be understood very broadly here. Anything that has a title has a title page, even if that “page” consists of only a single heading.

# \$v:theme-list

Enumerates available themes.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}theme-list |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | modules/variable.xsl                                |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:theme-list"
  as="element(*)">
  <theme name="Materials dark" id="materials-dark" dark="true"/>
  <theme name="Materials light" id="materials-light" dark="false"/>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

This variable is part of the experimental themes feature. It enumerates the available themes. Each theme has three parts, a name, an ID, and (optionally) an indication of whether or not it's a “dark” theme.

Themes are implemented in CSS. If the `$theme-picker` is enabled, it will be possible for the reader to select a theme. The theme names are used for this purpose.

The ID value is used as a class on the `html` element. Everything else about the theme is implemented in CSS. To add a new theme, provide a set of CSS rules that apply when the ID class is in effect.

The dark mode setting is only used as a default. If the document does not specify a `$default-theme`, if the user has never selected a theme, if the user has enabled dark mode at the operating system level, and if the browser makes this fact available, the first “dark” theme will automatically be selected.

# \$v:title-properties

Controls how titles are formatted.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}title-properties |
| Defined in: | modules/titles.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/titles.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:title-properties"
  as="element()+">
  <xsl:sequence select="$v:user-title-properties"/>
  <title xpath="self::db:section[ancestor::db:preface]" label="false"/>
  <title xpath="self::db:section[parent::db:section]"
    number-format="{ $section-numbers}"
    inherit="{ $section-numbers-inherit}"/>
  <title xpath="self::db:section"
    number-format="{ $section-numbers}"
    inherit="{ $component-numbers-inherit}"/>
  <title xpath="self::db:sect1"
    number-format="{ $section-numbers}"
    inherit="{ $component-numbers-inherit}"/>
  <title xpath="self::db:sect2|self::db:sect3|self::db:sect4|self::db:sect5"
    number-format="{ $section-numbers}"
    inherit="{ $section-numbers-inherit}"/>
  <title xpath="self::db:refsection|self::db:refsect1|self::db:refsect2|self::db:refsect3"/>
  <title xpath="self::db:article"/>
  <title xpath="self::db:preface"/>
  <title xpath="self::db:chapter"
    number-format="1"
    label="true"
    inherit="{ $division-numbers-inherit}"/>
```

```

<title xpath="self::db:appendix"
  number-format="A"
  label="true"
  inherit="{ $division-numbers-inherit }"/>
<title xpath="self::db:part"
  label="true"
  number="true"
  number-format="I"/>
<title xpath="self::db:reference" number-format="I"/>
<title xpath="self::db:figure|self::db:table|self::db:equation|self::db:example"
  label="true"
  number-format="1"
  inherit="true"/>
<title xpath="self::db:formalgroup"
  label="true"
  number-format="1"
  inherit="true"/>
<title xpath="self::db:step|self::db:listitem[parent::db:orderedlist]"
  label="false"
  number="false"
  inherit="true"/>
<title xpath="self::db:glossee|self::db:glosseesalso" label="true"/>
<title xpath="self::db:see|self::db:seesalso" label="true"/>
<title xpath="self::db:question|self::db:answer" label="true" title="true"/>
<title xpath="self::*"/>
</xsl:variable>

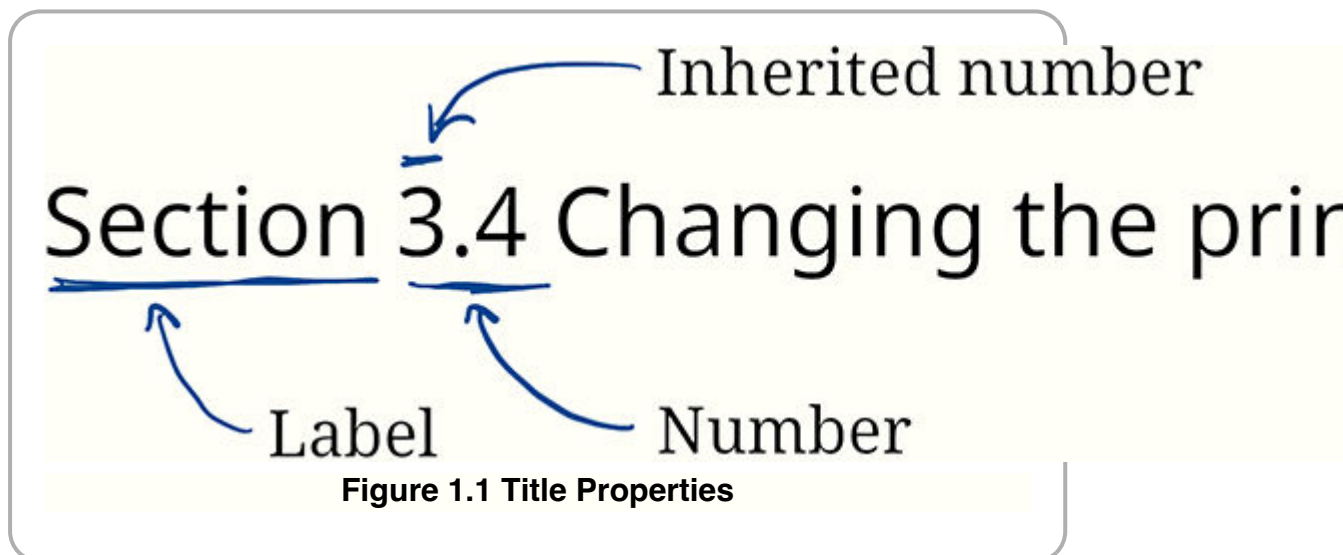
```

## Description

Titles are complicated. They occur all over the place (on books, on chapters, on sections, on figures, on formal paragraphs, etc.) and they need to be rendered differently in different contexts. You are always free to write your own templates to completely customize the formatting, but the stylesheets provide five declarative properties that you can select for

each title. As long as your formatting requirements are satisfied by these properties, you don't have to write custom templates to do the formatting.

The properties are label, number, number format, inherit, and "label-toc". Consider the title in *Figure 1.1, Title Properties*.



For any title context, identified by an XPath expression, you can set the `label` and `number` properties to specify whether or not those elements should appear. If `inherit` is true, the number of the parent element is included (so the figure might be section 4 in chapter 3, for example). The `number-format` property determines what style of numeration is used (arabic, lower- or upper-alpha, or lower- or upper-roman, for example).

The last property, `label-toc`, determines whether or not the label appears in the table of contents. This can be used, for example, to suppress the label "Figure" at the beginning of every figure in a list of figures.

The stylesheets search this list sequentially and the first match is used. Observe that `$v:user-title-properties` always comes first; if you want to override the default values, you can put your overrides in there. You do not have to redefine the entire list.

# \$v:titlepage-default

Default template for title pages.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}titlepage-default |
| Defined in: | modules/templates.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | modules/templates.xsl                                      |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:titlepage-default"
  as="element()">
  <titlepage-default>
    <header>
      <apply-templates select="db:title">
        <div class="title">
          <content/>
        </div>
      </apply-templates>
    </header>
  </titlepage-default>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

Title pages, taken loosely to mean anything with a `title`, are formatted using templates, see *Section 4.5, Templates*. If a template doesn't exist for a particular context, the

`$v:titlepage-default` template is used.

# \$v:toc-close

Persistent ToC close button.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}toc-close |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | modules/chunk-output.xsl                           |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:toc-close"  
  as="element()">  
  <span>X</span>  
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

The contents of this variable will be rendered as the “close” icon for the persistent ToC.



# \$v:toc-open

Persistent ToC open button.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}toc-open |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl                              |
| Used in:    | modules/chunk-output.xsl                          |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:toc-open"  
    as="element()">  
    <span>[toc]</span>  
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

The contents of this variable will be rendered as the “open” icon for the persistent ToC.

# \$v:unit-scale

List of known measurement units and their sizes.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}unit-scale |
| Defined in: | modules/units.xsl                                   |
| Used in:    | modules/units.xsl                                   |
| Used by:    | f:parse-length(), f:absolute-length()               |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:unit-scale"
  as="map(*)">
  <xsl:map>
    <xsl:map-entry key="px" select="1.0"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="in" select="$pixels-per-inch"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="m" select="$pixels-per-inch div 2.54 * 100.0"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="cm" select="$pixels-per-inch div 2.54"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="mm" select="$pixels-per-inch div 25.4"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="pt" select="$pixels-per-inch div 72.0"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="pc" select="$pixels-per-inch div 6.0"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="em" select="$pixels-per-inch div 6.0"/>
    <xsl:map-entry key="barleycorn" select="$pixels-per-inch div 3.0"/>
  </xsl:map>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

The `$v:unit-scale` map contains a set of measurement units and their absolute length in terms of pixels (as computed with `$pixels-per-inch`).

Recognized units at the time of this writing are shown in *Figure 1.1, Recognized units of measure*.

| Unit       | Size                               |
|------------|------------------------------------|
| px         | 1.0                                |
| in         | \$pixels-per-inch                  |
| m          | \$pixels-per-inch div 2.54 * 100.0 |
| cm         | \$pixels-per-inch div 2.54         |
| mm         | \$pixels-per-inch div 25.4         |
| pt         | \$pixels-per-inch div 72.0         |
| pc         | \$pixels-per-inch div 6.0          |
| em         | \$pixels-per-inch div 6.0          |
| barleycorn | \$pixels-per-inch div 3.0          |

**Figure 1.1 Recognized units of measure**

See also *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*.

# \$v:user-title-properties

Controls how titles are formatted.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}user-title-properties |
| Defined in: | modules/titles.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/titles.xsl   |
| Used by:    | \$v:title-properties   |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:user-title-properties"  
  as="element(*)"/>
```

## Description

This variable contains user-supplied overrides to `$v:title-properties`. See that variable for more details.

# \$v:user-xref-properties

Controls how cross-references are formatted.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}user-xref-properties |
| Defined in: | modules/xref.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/xref.xsl  |
| Used by:    | \$v:xref-properties   |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:user-xref-properties"  
  as="element(*)"/>
```

## Description

This variable contains user-supplied overrides to `$v:xref-properties`. See that variable for more details.

# `$v:verbatim-callouts`

A list determining how callouts are processed.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}verbatim-callouts |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl                                       |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl                                       |
| Used by:    | <code>\$v:verbatim-properties</code>                       |

## Synopsis

```
$v:verbatim-callouts as xs:string* := tokenize($verbatim-callouts, '\s+')
```

## Description

This value is a sequence constructed automatically from the `$verbatim-callouts` parameter.

# \$v:verbatim-line-style

List of verbatim elements to be rendered in the line style.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}verbatim-line-style |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl   |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-properties                                      |

## Synopsis

```
$v:verbatim-line-style := tokenize($verbatim-line-style, '\s+')
```

## Description

The elements whose local names appear in this list will be formatted using the line verbatim style by default. For a discussion of verbatim elements and styles, see *Section 4.3, Verbatim styles*.

This list is usually constructed from the `$verbatim-line-style` parameter.

# `$v:verbatim-number-every-nth`

Line numbering frequency.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | <code>{http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}verbatim-number-every-nth</code> |
| Defined in: | <code>modules/variable.xsl</code>   |
| Used in:    | <code>modules/verbatim.xsl</code>   |

## Synopsis

`$v:verbatim-number-every-nth := xs:integer($verbatim-number-every-nth)`

## Description

When formatting verbatim environments with line numbers, every `$verbatim-number-every-nth` line is numbered.

This value is usually constructed from the `$verbatim-number-every-nth` parameter.



# \$v:verbatim-number-first-line

Always number the first line of a verbatim listing?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}verbatim-number-first-line |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl  |

## Synopsis

`$v:verbatim-number-first-line := f:is-true($verbatim-number-first-line)`

## Description

When formatting verbatim environments with line numbers, the first line will be numbered (irrespective of the setting of `$v:verbatim-number-every-nth` if this value is true.

This value is usually constructed from the `$verbatim-number-first-line` parameter.

# \$v:verbatim-number-minlines

Shortest listing to number.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables</a> }verbatim-number-minlines |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
$v:verbatim-number-minlines := xs:integer($verbatim-number-minlines)
```

## Description

When formatting verbatim environments with line numbers, environments less than `$verbatim-number-minlines` in length will not be numbered.

This value is usually constructed from the `$verbatim-number-minlines` parameter.

# \$v:verbatim-numbered-elements

Identifies verbatim elements that should have line numbers.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}verbatim-numbered-elements |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl  |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-properties   |

## Synopsis

`$v:verbatim-numbered-elements as xs:string* := tokenize($verbatim-numbered-elements, '\s+')`

## Description

A list of the verbatim environments that should be numbered.

This value is usually constructed from the `$verbatim-numbered-elements` parameter.

# \$v:verbatim-plain-style

List of verbatim elements to be rendered in the plain style.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}verbatim-plain-style |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl  |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-properties                                       |

## Synopsis

```
$v:verbatim-plain-style as xs:string* := tokenize($verbatim-plain-style, '\s+')
```

## Description

The elements whose local names appear in this list will be formatted using the plain verbatim style by default. For a discussion of verbatim elements and styles, see *Section 4.3, Verbatim styles*.

This list is usually constructed from the `$verbatim-plain-style` parameter.

# \$v:verbatim-properties

Controls the verbatim properties of an element.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}verbatim-properties |
| Defined in: | modules/verbatim.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl   |

## Synopsis

`$v:verbatim-properties as array(map(*))`

## Description

When processing a verbatim environment, this array of maps is consulted to determine what properties apply to the verbatim environment. Most simple, global customizations of verbatim environments can be achieved by setting the `$verbatim-line-style`, `$verbatim-plain-style`, `$verbatim-callouts`, and `$verbatim-numbered-elements` parameters.

# \$v:verbatim-space

The space character to use when padding verbatim lines.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}verbatim-space |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl                                    |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl                                    |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:verbatim-space"
  as="node()">
  <xsl:value-of select="substring($verbatim-space || ' ', 1, 1)"/>
</xsl:variable>
```

## Description

When a verbatim line has to be padded in order to get a callout to appear in the correct column, this character will be used as the padding character. For a discussion of verbatim elements and styles, see *Section 4.3, Verbatim styles*.

This character is usually constructed from the `$verbatim-space` parameter. Unlike the `$verbatim-space`, this variable must be a node not a string.

# \$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages

Languages for which syntax highlighting should be performed.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/head.xsl, modules/verbatim.xsl                                       |
| Used by:    | f:highlight-verbatim()   |

## Synopsis

```
$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages := tokenize($verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages, 's+')
```

## Description

The `$verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages` is a single string for the convenience of users. This variable contains the languages as a list.

# \$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-options

Syntax highlighting options.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables</a> }verbatim-syntax-highlight-options |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl   |

## Synopsis

```
$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-options := map { }
```

## Description

If the Pygments (<https://pygments.org/>) syntax highlighter is applied, the `$verbatim-syntax-highlight-options` are applied.

Three options are recognized:

`language`

The programming language to use for syntax highlighting. This option is required.

`show-command`

If the `show-command` option is true (“1”, “yes”, or “true”), then the `pygmentize` command will be printed. This is a debugging option.

`show-result`

If the `show-result` option is true (“1”, “yes”, or “true”), then the string returned from `pygmentize` will be printed. This is a debugging option.

### Note



Syntax highlighting with Pygments requires spawning an external process for each highlighted environment. This can add significantly to the processing time if there are many such environments.



# `$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-pygments-options`

Pygments options.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables</a> }verbatim-syntax-highlight-pygments-options |
| Defined in: | modules/variable.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-pygments-options := map { }
```

## Description

If the Pygments (<https://pygments.org/>) syntax highlighter is applied, the

`$verbatim-syntax-highlight-pygments-options` are applied.

Each key/value pair in the map will be passed to `pygmentize` as a `-Pkey=value` option.

# \$v:VERSION

The stylesheet version.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}VERSION |
| Defined in: | VERSION.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | modules/head.xsl, modules/inlines.xsl            |

## Synopsis

```
$v:VERSION := '1.8.0'
```

## Description

This variable holds the version number of the stylesheets.

# `$v:VERSION-ID`

A unique version identifier.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Variable:   | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables</a> }VERSION-ID |
| Defined in: | VERSION.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/head.xsl  |

## Synopsis

`$v:VERSION-ID := '4af8cdde'`

## Description

Generally speaking the `$VERSION` is sufficient to identify the stylesheets. The `$VERSION-ID` adds a unique identifier derived from the latest git (<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Git>) commit.

# \$v:xref-properties

Controls how cross-references are formatted.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Variable:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/variables}xref-properties |
| Defined in: | modules/xref.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/xref.xsl   |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:variable name="v:xref-properties"
  as="element()+">
  <xsl:sequence select="$v:user-xref-properties"/>
  <crossref xpath="self::db:section[ancestor::db:preface]"
    prefix-key="sectioncalled"
    label="false"
    number="false"
    title="true"
    inherit="ancestor::db:preface[1]"
    inherit-separator="in the"/>
  <crossref xpath="self::db:section"
    label="true"
    number="true"
    title="true"/>
  <crossref xpath="self::db:preface|self::db:partintro"
    label="false"
    number="false"
    title="true"/>
  <crossref xpath="self::db:chapter|self::db:appendix"
    label="true"
    number="true"
    title="true"/>
  <crossref xpath="self::db:part|self::db:reference"
```

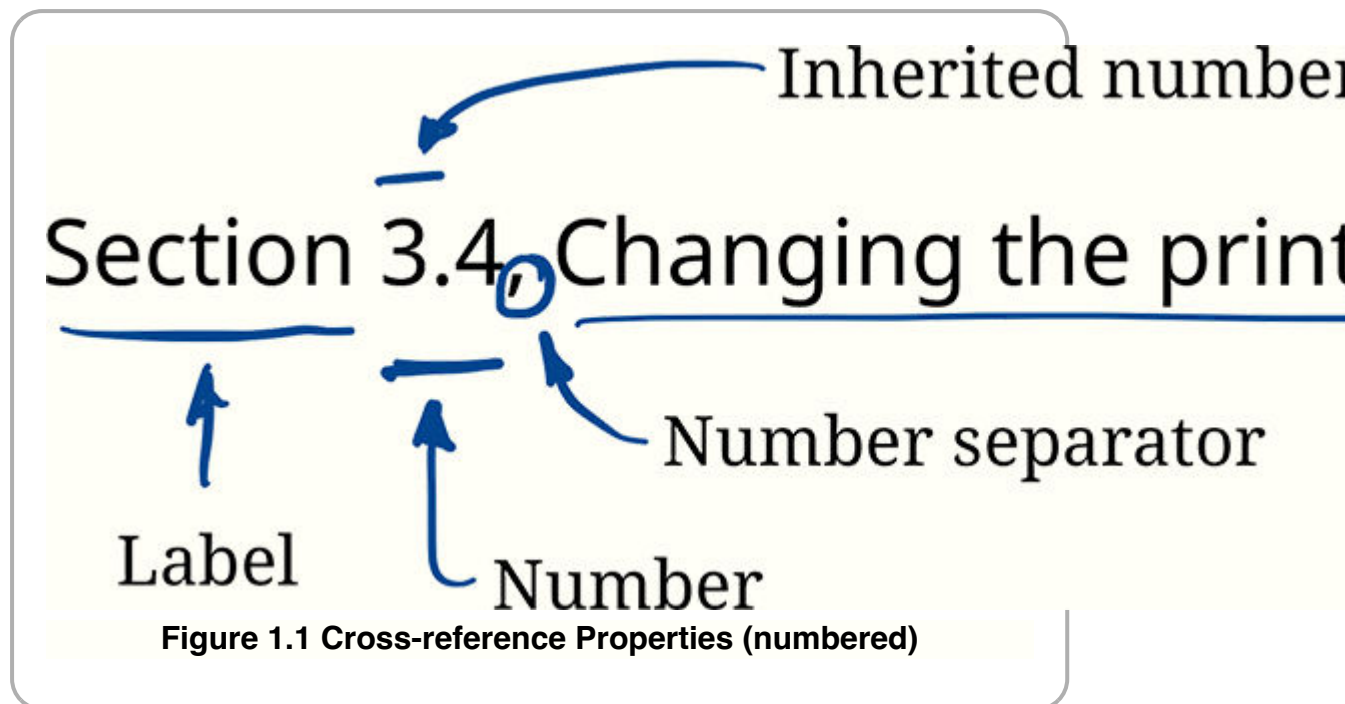
```

        label="true"
        number="true"
        title="true"/>
<crossref xpath="self::db:figure|self::db:example|self::db:table          |self::db:procedure|self::db:table"
        label="true"
        number="true"
        title="true"/>
<crossref xpath="self::db:listitem[parent::db:orderedlist]"
        label="false"
        number="true"
        title="false"/>
<crossref xpath="self::db:question|self::db:answer"
        label="true"
        number="false"
        title="false"/>
<crossref xpath="self::db:step"
        label="false"
        number="true"
        prefix-key="step"
        title="false"/>
<crossref xpath="self::db:see" prefix-key="see" title="true"/>
<crossref xpath="self::db:seealso" prefix-key="seealso" title="true"/>
<crossref xpath="self::db:glosssee" prefix-key="glosssee" title="true"/>
<crossref xpath="self::db:glossseealso"
        prefix-key="glossseealso"
        title="true"/>
<crossref xpath="self::*" label="false" number="false" title="true"/>
</xsl:variable>

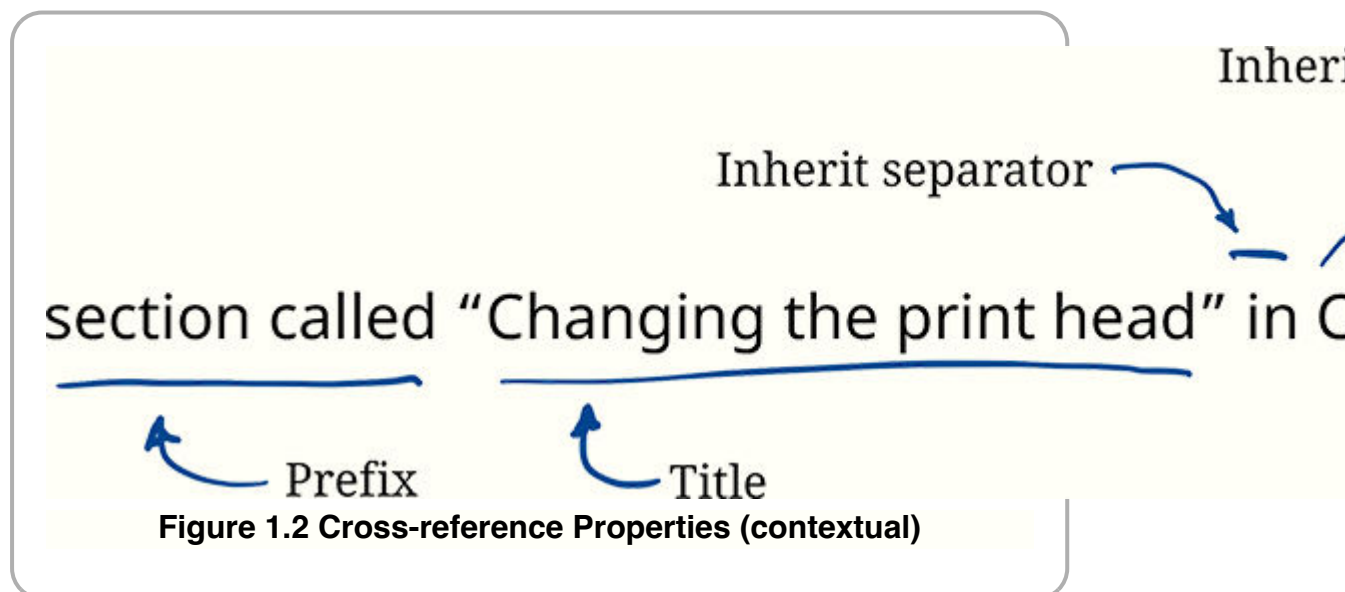
```

## Description

Cross-references, like title properties, are complicated. They can occur almost anywhere and several styles are possible.



For documents with numbered sections, a style such as the one shown in *Figure 1.1, Cross-reference Properties (numbered)* is common. Here the label, number, and title are sufficient.



For documents without section numbers, a different approach is required. In *Figure 1.2, Cross-reference Properties (contextual)*, we see how a prefix (which can be literal text or a key into a localization) precedes the title. If an inherit reference is defined, the cross reference will include a reference to that element as well. A separator can be placed between them. If the format for the inherited reference also specifies an inherited reference, the process will continue.

## III. Function reference

# f:absolute-length

Returns the absolute length of a unit of measurement.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}absolute-length#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/units.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl, modules/tablecals.xsl                 |
| Used by:    | f:css-length()   |

## Synopsis

**f:absolute-length**(`$length` as map(\*)) as `xs:double`

## Description

For a given unit of measurement, returns the absolute length in terms of pixels. For a discussion of units, see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*.

See also `$pixels-per-inch`, `$default-length-magnitude`, and `$default-length-unit`.



# f:attributes

Returns the attribute that apply to an output element.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}attributes#2              |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}attributes#4              |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl (2)  |
| Used in:    | modules/functions.xsl, modules/inlines.xsl, modules/attributes.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:attributes(), t:inline   |

## Synopsis

```
f:attributes( $node as element(),  
             $attributes as attribute(*) ) as attribute(*)
```

```
f:attributes( $node as element(),  
             $attributes as attribute(*),  
             $extra-classes as xs:string*,  
             $exclude-classes as xs:string*) as attribute(*)
```

## Description

Most output elements have attributes: any `xml:id` attributes in the source are reflected in the output as `id` attributes, most elements get a `class` attribute, etc. The `f:attributes()` function is called to determine what those attributes should be.

In practice, the way this usually works is the element is processed in the `m:attributes` mode and that template calls `f:attributes()` to generate the actual attribute nodes.

# f:cals-colsep

Returns the “colsep” value associated with a CALS table cell.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}cals-colsep#3 |
| Defined in: | modules/tablecals.xsl                                  |
| Used in:    | modules/tablecals.xsl                                  |

## Synopsis

```
f:cals-colsep( $row as element(db:row),  
               $cell as map(*),  
               $last-col-colsep as xs:boolean) as xs:string?
```

## Description

The column separator, or “colsep”, associated with a CALS table cell depends on a variety of factors: `colspec`, and `spanspec` elements as well as the attributes on the cell itself and its ancestors.

This function returns the value that applies to the specified cell.

# f:cals-rowsep

Returns the “rowsep” value associated with a CALS table cell.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}cals-rowsep#3 |
| Defined in: | modules/tablecals.xsl                                  |
| Used in:    | modules/tablecals.xsl                                  |

## Synopsis

```
f:cals-rowsep( $row as element(db:row),  
               $cell as map(*),  
               $last-row-rowsep as xs:boolean) as xs:string?
```

## Description

The row separator, or “rowsep”, associated with a CALS table cell depends on a variety of factors: `colspec`, and `spanspec` elements as well as the attributes on the cell itself and its ancestors.

This function returns the value that applies to the specified cell.

# f:check-gentext

Returns generated text.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}check-gentext#3     |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/functions.xsl, modules/info.xsl, modules/inlines.xsl |

## Synopsis

```
f:check-gentext( $node as element(),  
                 $context as xs:string,  
                 $key as xs:string) as item()*
```

## Description

Like `f:gentext()`, this function returns the generated text appropriate for its arguments. However, if there is no appropriate generated text, this function returns an empty sequence *without* generating any warning messages.

# f:chunk

Returns chunking attributes.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}chunk#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/chunk.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | modules/attributes.xsl                           |

## Synopsis

`f:chunk( $node as element() ) as attribute(*)`

## Description

This function returns the `db-chunk` and perhaps other chunking-related attributes for the given node.

# f:chunk-filename

Returns the filename to use for a particular chunk.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}chunk-filename#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/chunk.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/chunk.xsl   |
| Used by:    | f:chunk()   |

## Synopsis

**f:chunk-filename**( `$node` as element()) as `xs:string`

## Description

When chunking, see *Section 2.6, “Chunked” output*, this function is called to determine the filename for a chunk. The default implementation considers relevant `db` processing instructions (`filename`, `href`, and `basename` pseudo-attributes) as well as the generated ID of the element.

# f:chunk-title

Returns the title of a chunk.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}chunk-title#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl                              |
| Used in:    | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl                              |
| Used by:    | t:bottom-nav   |

## Synopsis

**f:chunk-title**( `$chunk` as element()?) as `node()`\*

## Description

When the title of a neighboring chunk is required (for header or footer navigation, for example), this function can be used to obtain the title of that chunk.

This function must return the HTML-formatted title, not the DocBook title.

# f:css-length

Returns a length in the format of a CSS property.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}css-length#2 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl                                   |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl                                   |

## Synopsis

```
f:css-length( $property as xs:string,  
              $length as map(*)?) as xs:string?
```

## Description

Returns the CSS property specified with the corresponding length, if the length exists.  
Returns the empty sequence otherwise.



# f:css-property

Returns a CSS property for a given value.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}css-property#2 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl                                     |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl                                     |
| Used by:    | f:css-length()  |

## Synopsis

```
f:css-property($property as xs:string,  
              $value as xs:string?) as xs:string?
```

## Description

If the specified value exists, a string formatted as a CSS property is returned. If the value doesn't exist, an empty sequence is returned.

# f:date-format

Returns the format string for a date.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}date-format#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl                                  |
| Used in:    | modules/inlines.xsl                                    |

## Synopsis

**f:date-format**( `$context` as element()) as `xs:string`

## Description

Dates may be stored in a variety of formats and the `pubdate` element even allows inline markup. The `f:date-format()` function determines how a date will be formatted:

- If the date contains embedded markup, the special value “`apply-templates`” is returned to indicate that string formatting isn’t appropriate.
- If the date conforms to an *ISO 8601* date, the `$date-date-format` string is returned.
- If the date conforms to an *ISO 8601* dateTime, the `$date-dateTime-format` string is returned.
- If the date does not conform to either of those date formats, “`apply-templates`” is returned.

If the date conforms to a date or dateTime, the author may override the format string by providing a `db` processing instruction with a `date-format` pseudo-attribute.

*Example 1.1, Several dates in ISO 8601 formats* shows an example of several dates that may be formatted in more familiar forms.

```
<para>The Unix epoch begins at  
<date>1970-01-01T00:00:00Z</date>.  
Grace Hopper was born on <date>1906-12-09</date>.  
That was a <date><?db date-format="[F]"?>1906-12-09</date>.
```

I was born on a `<date>Friday</date>.</para>`

### Example 1.1 Several dates in ISO 8601 formats

With default formats, these are formatted as shown:

The Unix epoch begins at 00:00 01 Jan 1970. Grace Hopper was born on 09 Dec 1906. That was a Sunday. I was born on a Friday.

# f:empty-length

Returns a map that represents an empty length.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions</a> }empty-length#0 |
| Defined in: | modules/units.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl   |
| Used by:    | f:object-width(), f:object-height(), f:object-contentwidth(), f:object-contentheight()                          |

## Synopsis

**f:empty-length()** as `map(*)`

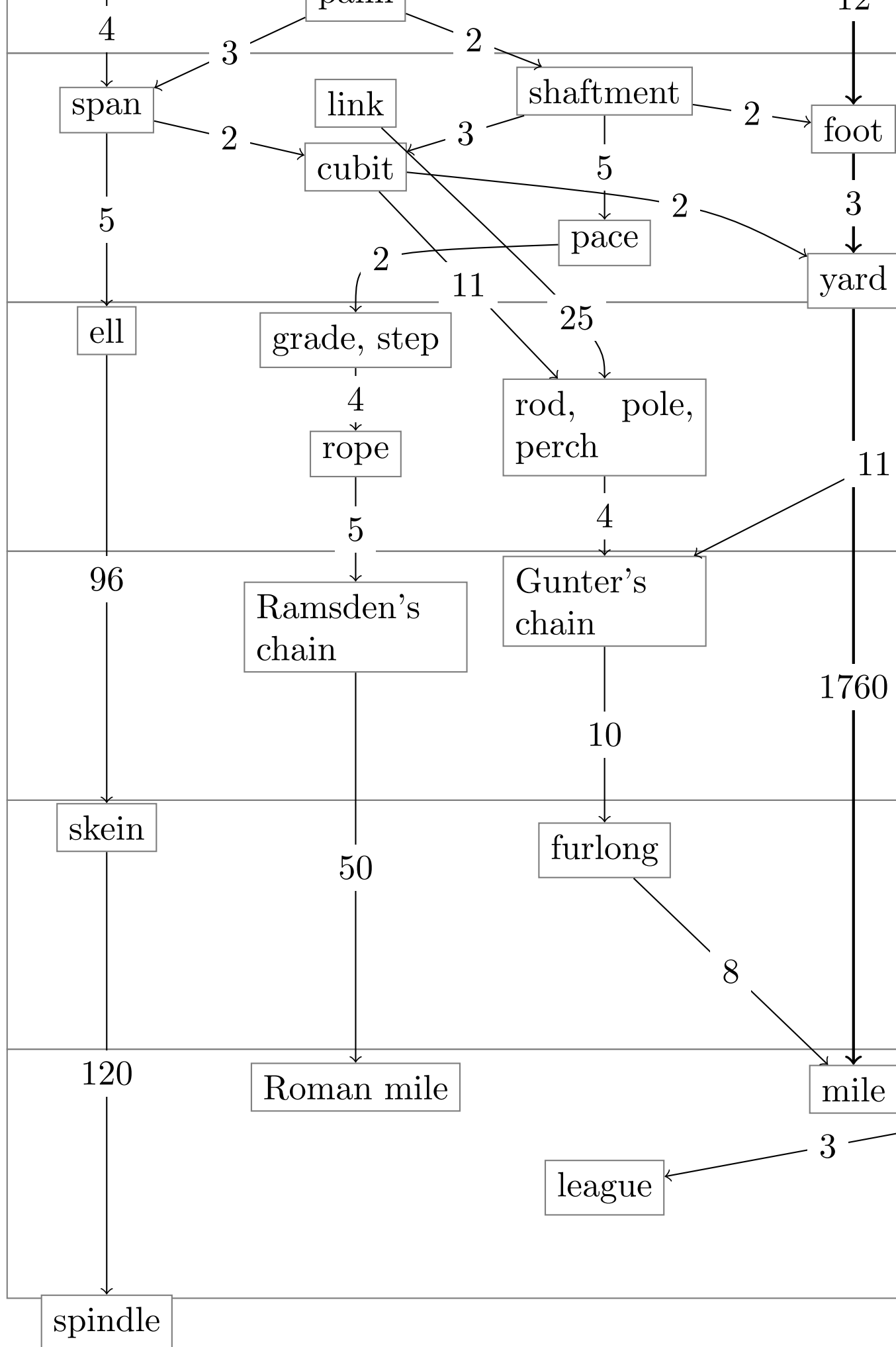
## Description

Lengths are compound objects. Lengths consist of a magnitude (a number) and a unit: 3 inches, for example, or 11.9 barleycorns<sup>1</sup> in the case of absolute lengths. For relative lengths, the unit is something relative like percent.

These are represented as maps internally and `f:empty-length()` returns a length with no magnitude or units.

---

<sup>1</sup> Yes, that's a real unit. It's equal to  $\frac{1}{3}$  of an inch. I'll leave it to Wikipedia ([https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Barleycorn\\_\(unit\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Barleycorn_(unit))) to explain the details. Just looking at the chart of imperial units makes me want to add them all!



# f:equal-lengths

Returns true if two lengths are equal.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}equal-lengths#2 |
| Defined in: | modules/units.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl                                      |

## Synopsis

```
f:equal-lengths( $a as map(*)?,  
                 $b as map(*)? ) as xs:boolean
```

## Description

Lengths (see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*) are stored in maps and so are not directly comparable. This function returns true if two lengths are equal.

---

Image credit: 42CrMo4, Christoph Päper

# f:generate-id

Generate a unique identifier for an element.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}generate-id#1  |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}generate-id#2  |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl, modules/shared.xsl (2)   |
| Used in:    | modules/shared.xsl, modules/unhandled.xsl, modules/functions.xsl, modules/index.xsl, modules/programming.xsl, modules/verbatim.xsl, modules/tablehtml.xsl, modules/xlink.xsl, modules/links.xsl, modules/attributes.xsl, modules/annotations.xsl, modules/chunk.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:generate-id(), f:generate-id(), f:unique-id(), f:id(), f:href(), f:chunk-filename()   |

## Synopsis

**f:generate-id**( `$node` as element()) as `xs:string`

**f:generate-id**( `$node` as element(),  
                  `$use-xml-id` as `xs:boolean`) as `xs:string`

**f:generate-id**( `$node` as element()) as `xs:string`

## Description

This function returns a unique ID for an element. The ID is generated from the names of the ancestors and preceding siblings of the element. This value will be consistent across different transformations as long as the ancestors and preceding siblings remain unchanged.

If `use-xml-id` is true and there's an element with a `xml:id` attribute among the ancestors, the unique identifier is rooted at that element, rather than traversing all the way to the root of the document.

Disabling this feature by setting `use-xml-id` to false allows for the creation of globally unique IDs with `f:unique-id()`.

# f:gentext

Returns generated text.

|  |
|--|
| Function: {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}gentext#2   |
| {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}gentext#3   |
| Defined in: modules/gentext.xsl (2)  |
| Used in: modules/titles.xsl, modules/functions.xsl, modules/toc.xsl, modules/refentry.xsl, modules/glossary.xsl, modules/index.xsl, modules/titlepage.xsl, modules/info.xsl, modules/lists.xsl, modules/inlines.xsl, modules/xlink.xsl, modules/xref.xsl, modules/chunk-output.xsl, modules/msgset.xsl |
| Used by: t:person-name-list  |

## Synopsis

```
f:gentext( $node as element(),  
           $context as xs:string) as item()*
```

```
f:gentext( $node as element(),  
           $context as xs:string,  
           $key as xs:string) as item()*
```

## Description

Returns the generated text associated with the specified key in the specified context for the specified node. If key is not provided, the element name of the node is used.

For example, if the `f:language()` of the `$node` is English, then in the “title” context, the generated text for the key “tableofcontents” is “Table of Contents”. If the language is French, then the generated text is “Table des matières”.

The contexts and the keys are defined in the locale files.



# f:gentext-letters

Returns the letters for the in-scope language.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}gentext-letters#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | Not used.  |

## Synopsis

**f:gentext-letters**( `$node` as element()) as `element(l:letters)`

## Description

This function works calls `f:language()` on the specified node and then calls `f:gentext-letters-for-language()` with that language.

# f:gentext-letters-for-language

Returns the letters for a language.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}gentext-letters-for-language#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/functions.xsl, modules/index.xsl                                |
| Used by:    | f:gentext-letters(), f:gentext-letters-for-language()                   |

## Synopsis

**f:gentext-letters-for-language**( `$lang` as xs:string) as `element(l:letters)`

## Description

Returns a language-specific list of letters. These are used, for example, to construct the divisions in an index.

# f:highlight-verbatim

Syntax highlight verbatim element?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}highlight-verbatim#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/verbatim.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl  |

## Synopsis

**f:highlight-verbatim**( `$node` as element()) as `xs:boolean`

## Description

Returns true if the specified verbatim environment should have syntax highlighting applied to it. This depends on the `language` specified on the environment and the `$verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages` parameter.

# f:href

Returns the href link to a node.

|  |
|--|
| Function: {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}href#2  |
| Defined in: modules/functions.xsl  |
| Used in: modules/glossary.xsl, modules/index.xsl, modules/programming.xsl, modules/objects.xsl, modules/xlink.xsl, modules/links.xsl |
| Used by: t:index-zone-reference, t:imagemap  |

## Synopsis

```
f:href( $context as node(),  
        $node as element()) as xs:string
```

## Description

This function generates a value for an HTML `href` attribute at the position of the context that will link to the node.

# f:id

Returns an ID for the element.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}id#1   |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl, modules/shared.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/toc.xsl, modules/blocks.xsl, modules/objects.xsl, modules/footnotes.xsl,<br>modules/links.xsl |
| Used by:    | t:imagemap  |

## Synopsis

`f:id( $node as element() as xs:string`

`f:id( $node as element() as xs:string`

## Description

This function returns the ID of the element. If the element has an `xml:id` attribute, the value of that attribute is returned. Otherwise, the function constructs a unique ID value for the element.

The simplest way to construct a unique ID is with the `f:generate-id()` function. However, those values are only unique within the context of a single transformation and tend to vary over time. This can break anchors used in published documents and leads to spurious differences between documents.

The stylesheets generate their own unique IDs with `f:generate-id()`.

# f:intra-number-separator

Return the intra-number separator.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}intra-number-separator#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/titles.xsl  |

## Synopsis

**f:intra-number-separator**(`$node` as element()) as `node()`\*

## Description

When a compound number appears in a title, this function is used to obtain the intra number separator. The most common separator is “.” which results in numbers such as “Section 3.4”. If the function returned “\*”, the section title would be rendered as “Section 3\*4”.

# f:is-empty-length

Tests if a length is empty.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}is-empty-length#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/units.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/units.xsl, modules/objects.xsl                     |
| Used by:    | f:equal-lengths()  |

## Synopsis

**f:is-empty-length**(`$length` as map(\*)?) as `xs:boolean`

## Description

Returns true if the length is empty. For a discussion of units and lengths, see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*.

# f:is-true

Determines if a given value represents “true”

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}is-true#1  |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl   |
| Used in:    | docbook.xsl, main.xsl, modules/variable.xsl, modules/head.xsl, modules/titles.xsl, modules/toc.xsl, modules/index.xsl, modules/info.xsl, modules/blocks.xsl, modules/verbatim.xsl, modules/xlink.xsl, modules/xref.xsl, modules/profile.xsl, modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl, modules/chunk-output.xsl, drivers.xsl |
| Used by:    | \$v:verbatim-number-first-line, \$v:chunk-renumber-footnotes, t:generate-index, t:person-name-first-last, f:verbatim-numbered(), f:verbatim-trim-trailing(), t:preprocess   |

## Synopsis

**f:is-true**( `$value` ) as `xs:boolean`

## Description

There are several conventions for indicating “true” or “false”. XSLT uses the words “yes” and “no” in many places. The XML Schema data type for `xs:boolean` uses “true” and “false” but also “1” and “0”.

The `f:is-true()` function returns `true()` for any of “`true()`”, “yes”, “true”, or a value that can be cast to an integer if that integer is not zero. It returns `false()` for any of “`false()`”, “no”, “false”, a value that can be cast to an integer that is zero, or the empty sequence.

It reports an error for any other value and returns “`true()`”.



# f:l10n-language

Returns the best matching localization language.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}l10n-language#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl                                    |
| Used in:    | modules/index.xsl  |
| Used by:    | t:generate-index   |

## Synopsis

**f:l10n-language**( `$target` as element()) as `xs:string`

## Description

This function returns the localization language that best matches the language of the `$target` node. The default language will be returned if there is no localization available for that language.

# f:label-separator

Returns the label separator.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}label-separator#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | modules/titles.xsl, modules/titlepage.xsl                  |

## Synopsis

**f:label-separator**(`$node` as element()) as `node()`\*

## Description

The label separator separates a label from the number or title that follows it.

# f:language

Returns the language associated with an element.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}language#1             |
| Defined in: | modules/gentext.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/gentext.xsl, modules/functions.xsl, modules/inlines.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:gentext-letters()   |

## Synopsis

**f:language**( `$node` as node()) as `xs:string`

## Description

Returns the value of the nearest in-scope `xml:lang` attribute or `$default-language` if no such attribute exists.

# f:length-string

Returns the string representation of a length.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}length-string#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/units.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl                                      |

## Synopsis

**f:length-string**(`$length` as map(\*)) as `xs:string?`

## Description

For a given length (see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*), returns the relative or absolute length formatted as a string. Relative lengths are formatted as the length followed by a literal “\*” (e.g., “3\*”). Absolute lengths are formatted as the length followed by the unit (e.g., “2.54cm”).

# f:length-units

Returns the units associated with a length.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}length-units#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/units.xsl                                       |
| Used in:    | Not used.   |

## Synopsis

`f:length-units( $length as xs:string?) as xs:string?`

## Description

For a given length (see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*), returns the units associated with the length. Returns an empty sequence for relative lengths.

# f:make-length

Construct a length from constituent parts.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}make-length#1             |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}make-length#2             |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}make-length#3             |
| Defined in: | modules/units.xsl (3)  |
| Used in:    | modules/units.xsl, modules/objects.xsl                             |
| Used by:    | f:make-length(), f:object-contentwidth(), f:object-contentheight() |

## Synopsis

**f:make-length**( \$relative as xs:double) as map(\*)

**f:make-length**( \$magnitude as xs:double,  
\$unit as xs:string) as map(\*)

**f:make-length**( \$relative as xs:double,  
\$magnitude as xs:double,  
\$unit as xs:string) as map(\*)

## Description

These functions construct a length (see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*) from either a relative magnitude, an absolute magnitude and a unit, or both.

# f:number-separator

Returns the number separator.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions</a> }number-separator#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl   |
| Used in:    | Not used.   |

## Synopsis

**f:number-separator**(`$node` as element()) as `node()`\*

## Description

The number separator separates a number (in a title) from the title that follows it.

# f:object-align

Returns the alignment of a media object.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}object-align#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl                                     |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl                                     |

## Synopsis

**f:object-align**( `$object` as element()) as `xs:string?`

## Description

By default, this function simply returns the value of the object's `align` attribute.



# f:object-contentheight

Returns the content height of an object.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}object-contentheight#2 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xml   |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xml   |

## Synopsis

```
f:object-contentheight( $object as element(),  
    $intrinsicheight as map(*) ) as map(*)
```

## Description

Returns the content height, for reasons of historical accident, in the `contentdepth` attribute. This function returns the height of an object as a length (see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*), if it has one. If the height is specified as a percentage, and the intrinsic size of the object is known, then an absolute length equal to that percentage of the intrinsic size is returned.

If `$image-ignore-scaling` is true, or no `contentdepth` is specified for the object, the empty sequence is returned.

# f:object-contentwidth

Returns the content width of an object.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}object-contentwidth#2 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl  |

## Synopsis

```
f:object-contentwidth( $object as element(),  
                      $intrinsicwidth as map(*) ) as map(*)
```

## Description

Returns the content width. This function returns the width of an object as a length (see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*), if it has one. If the width is specified as a percentage, and the intrinsic size of the object is known, the an absolute length equal to that percentage of the intrinsic size is returned.

If `$image-ignore-scaling` is true, or no `contentwidth` is specified for the object, the empty sequence is returned.

# f:object-height

Returns the height (depth) of a `mediaobject` .

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}object-height#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl                                      |
| Used by:    | f:object-scalefit()                                      |

## Synopsis

`f:object-height( $object as element()) as map(*)`

## Description

The height of a `mediaobject` is specified, for reasons of historical accident, in the `depth` attribute. This function returns the height of an object as a length (see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*), if it has one. If `$image-ignore-scaling` is true, or no `depth` is specified for the object, the empty sequence is returned.

# f:object-properties

Returns the properties of an object.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}object-properties#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl  |

## Synopsis

**f:object-properties**(`$uri` as xs:string) as `map(xs:string, xs:anyAtomicType)`

## Description

If the extension functions are available, the stylesheets will interrogate images for their properties. The goal is to return, at a minimum, the height and width of the image. This is used to compute viewport and scaling factors. If the image metadata extension is available, then considerably more information may be returned in the map.

For example, the image metadata properties of the Amaryllis photograph in *Figure 1.1, An amaryllis* are:

| Property name  | Property value <sup>a</sup>            |
|--|--|
| bits-per-sample  | 8                                      |
| blue-colorant  | (0.1431, 0.0606, 0.7141)               |
| blue-trc   | 0.0, 0.0000763, 0.0001526, 0.000228... |
| class  | Display Device                         |
| cmm-type   | Lino                                   |
| color-space  | RGB                                    |
| color-type   | True Color with Alpha                  |
| component-1  | Y component: Quantization table 0, ... |
| component-2  | Cb component: Quantization table 1,... |
| component-3  | Cr component: Quantization table 1,... |
| compression-type   | Baseline                               |
| data-precision   | 8 bits                                 |
| detected-file-type-long-name   | Joint Photographic Experts Group       |
| detected-file-type-name  | JPEG                                   |
| <sup>a</sup> Some values have been truncated to prevent the table from becoming unwieldy. These values can be identified by a trailing ellipsis (...). |  |

| Property name  | Property value <sup>a</sup>                           |
|--|---|
| detected-mime-type   | image/jpeg  |
| device-manufacturer  | IEC   |
| device-mfg-description   | IEC <a href="http://www.iec.ch">http://www.iec.ch</a> |
| device-model   | sRGB  |
| device-model-description   | IEC 61966-2.1 Default RGB colour sp...                |
| expected-file-name-extension   | jpg   |
| filter-method  | Adaptive  |
| green-colorant   | (0.3851, 0.7169, 0.0971)                              |
| green-trc  | 0.0, 0.0000763, 0.0001526, 0.000228...                |
| height   | 226   |
| image-gamma  | 0.455   |
| image-height   | 336 pixels  |
| image-width  | 500 pixels  |
| interlace-method   | No Interlace  |
| luminance  | (76.0365, 80, 87.1246)                                |
| measurement  | 1931 2° Observer, Backing (0, 0, 0)...                |
| media-black-point  | (0, 0, 0)   |
| media-white-point  | (0.9505, 1, 1.0891)                                   |
| number-of-components   | 3   |
| number-of-tables   | 4 Huffman tables                                      |
| primary-platform   | Microsoft Corporation                                 |
| profile-connection-space   | XYZ   |
| profile-copyright  | Copyright (c) 1998 Hewlett-Packard ...                |
| profile-date/time  | 1998-02-09T06:49:00                                   |
| profile-description  | sRGB IEC61966-2.1                                     |
| profile-size   | 3144  |
| red-colorant   | (0.4361, 0.2225, 0.0139)                              |
| red-trc  | 0.0, 0.0000763, 0.0001526, 0.000228...                |
| resolution-units   | inch  |
| signature  | acsp  |
| tag-count  | 17  |
| technology   | CRT   |
| thumbnail-height-pixels  | 0   |
| thumbnail-width-pixels   | 0   |
| version  | 2.1.0   |
| viewing-conditions   | view (0x76696577): 36 bytes                           |
| viewing-conditions-description   | Reference Viewing Condition in IEC6...                |
| <sup>a</sup> Some values have been truncated to prevent the table from becoming unwieldy. These values can be identified by a trailing ellipsis (...). |   |

| Property name  | Property value <sup>a</sup> |
|--|-----------------------------|
| width  | 800                         |
| x-resolution   | 72 dots                     |
| xyz-values   | 0.964 1 0.825               |
| y-resolution   | 72 dots                     |
| <sup>a</sup> Some values have been truncated to prevent the table from becoming unwieldy. These values can be identified by a trailing ellipsis (...). |                             |



**Figure 1.1 An amaryllis**

# f:object-scale

Returns the scaling factor for an object.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}object-scale#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl                                     |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl                                     |

## Synopsis

**f:object-scale**( `$object` as element()) as `xs:double`

## Description

Returns the scaling factor for an object. Scaling only applies if `$image-ignore-scaling` is false and the object has a `scale` attribute.

# f:object-scalefit

Scale object to fit?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}object-scalefit#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl  |

## Synopsis

**f:object-scalefit**( `$object` as element()) as `xs:boolean`

## Description

This function determines whether or not an object should be scaled to fit its container.



# f:object-valign

Returns the vertical alignment of a media object.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}object-valign#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl                                      |

## Synopsis

**f:object-valign**( `$object` as element()) as `xs:string?`

## Description

By default, this function simply returns the value of the object's `valign` attribute. If it doesn't have a `valign` attribute, the value "`middle`" is returned, because that's what previous versions of stylesheets for DocBook did.

# f:object-width

Returns the width of a `mediaobject` .

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}object-width#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl                                     |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl                                     |
| Used by:    | f:object-scalefit()                                     |

## Synopsis

`f:object-width( $object as element()) as map(*)`

## Description

This function returns the width of an object as a length (see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*), if it has one. If `$image-ignore-scaling` is true, or no `width` is specified for the object, the empty length is returned.

# f:orderedlist-item-numeration

Returns the item numeration format for an ordered list.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}orderedlist-item-numeration#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/titles.xsl, modules/lists.xsl                                  |

## Synopsis

**f:orderedlist-item-numeration**( `$node` as element(db:listitem)) as `xs:string`

## Description

Computes the numeration for the specified list item. See `$orderedlist-item-numeration` .

# f:orderedlist-item-number

Returns the item number of an item in an ordered list.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}orderedlist-item-number#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/functions.xsl  |
| Used by:    | f:orderedlist-item-numeration()                                    |

## Synopsis

**f:orderedlist-item-number**(`$node` as element(db:listitem)) as `xs:integer+`

## Description

Returns the item number of a list item. This is always an integer, even if it will be formatted as a letter, roman numeral, or other symbol. For nested lists, this function returns the fully qualified item number. For example, for the second item in the fourth item in the third item of a list, it will return `(2, 4, 3)`.

# f:orderedlist-startingnumber

Returns the starting number of an ordered list.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}orderedlist-startingnumber#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/functions.xsl, modules/lists.xsl                              |
| Used by:    | f:orderedlist-startingnumber(), f:orderedlist-item-number()           |

## Synopsis

**f:orderedlist-startingnumber**(`$list` as element(db:orderedlist)) as `xs:integer`

## Description

In most `orderedlist` elements, the first item in the list is item number “1”. However, the `startingnumber` attribute can specify a different initial number and, in the case of continued lists, the starting number depends on the ending number of the preceding list.

The `f:orderedlist-startingnumber()` returns the number of the first list item in an ordered list.

# f:parse-length

Parse a string into a length.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}parse-length#1   |
| Defined in: | modules/units.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/variable.xsl, modules/units.xsl, modules/objects.xsl, modules/tablecals.xsl   |
| Used by:    | \$v:nominal-page-width, \$v:image-nominal-width, \$v:image-nominal-height, f:length-units(), f:object-width(), f:object-height(), f:object-contentwidth(), f:object-contentheight() |

## Synopsis

**f:parse-length**( *\$length* as xs:string) as *map*(\*)

## Description

This function parses a string such as “4in” or “3.14cm” or “50%” into a length. It will fall back to a distance of the *\$default-length-magnitude* and *\$default-length-unit* if the string cannot be parsed as a length.

# f:pi

Returns DocBook processing-instruction property values.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}pi#2  |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}pi#3  |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl (2)  |
| Used in:    | modules/functions.xsl, modules/toc.xsl, modules/index.xsl, modules/lists.xsl, modules/blocks.xsl, modules/programming.xsl, modules/verbatim.xsl, modules/xlink.xsl, drivers.xsl, modules/info.xsl, modules/chunk.xsl |
| Used by:    | f:pi(), f:verbatim-style(), f:verbatim-highlight(), f:xlink-style(), t:preprocess, f:date-format(), f:verbatim-numbered(), f:verbatim-trim-trailing(), f:chunk-filename()  |

## Synopsis

```
f:pi( $context as node()?,  
      $property as xs:string) as xs:string?
```

```
f:pi( $context as node()?,  
      $property as xs:string,  
      $default as xs:string*) as xs:string*
```

## Description

Several DocBook elements have alternate presentations that can be specified with global parameters. Many of them can also be set on a per-element basis with a `db` processing instruction. The date format, for example, can be changed in this way as described in the `f:date-format()` function.

The `f:pi()` function takes a context and the name of a property. It returns the value specified for that property from all of the `db` processing instructions in the specified context. The three argument version allows you to specify a default value. It will be returned if there are no values specified for the property in that context.

# f:pi-attributes

Returns processing-instruction pseudo-attributes as attributes.

|   |
|---|
| Function: {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}pi-attributes#1  |
| Defined in: modules/functions.xsl   |
| Used in: modules/functions.xsl, modules/blocks.xsl, modules/objects.xsl, modules/verbatim.xsl, modules/tablecols.xsl, modules/inlines.xsl |

## Synopsis

**f:pi-attributes**(`$pis` as processing-instruction(\*) as `element()`?)

## Description

Using pseudo-attributes in a `db` processing instruction is a convenient mechanism for providing additional options to the stylesheets. But processing them is tedious. This function gathers together the pseudo-attributes specified in a series of processing instructions and returns them as attributes on an element. If the same property occurs more than once in the sequence, the last value will be returned.



# f:post-label-punctuation

Punctuation that follows a label.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}post-label-punctuation#1 |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}post-label-punctuation#2 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl (2)   |
| Used in:    | modules/functions.xsl, modules/titles.xsl                         |
| Used by:    | f:post-label-punctuation()  |

## Synopsis

**f:post-label-punctuation**(*\$node* as element()) as *xs:string?*

**f:post-label-punctuation**(*\$node* as element(),  
*\$context* as *xs:string?*) as *xs:string?*

## Description

Titles consist of an optional label, followed by an optional number, followed by the title. In some contexts, additional prefixes and suffixes may also be involved. In the title “Chapter 1 Introduction”, the word “Chapter” is the label, “1” is the number, and “Introduction” is the title.

When a label appears in a title, the **f:post-label-punctuation()** function determines what punctuation, if any, should follow it.

# f:refsection

Is this a section in a `refentry` ?

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}refsection#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl                                 |
| Used in:    | modules/functions.xsl                                 |
| Used by:    | f:section()   |

## Synopsis

**f:refsection**( `$node` as element()) as `xs:boolean`

## Description

Returns true if the node is a section in a `refentry` , a `refsection` , `refsect1` , `refsect2` , or `refsect3` element.

# f:relative-length

Returns the relative portion of a length, if it has one.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}relative-length#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/units.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/tablecals.xsl                                      |

## Synopsis

**f:relative-length**( `$length` as map(\*)) as `xs:double`

## Description

For a given length, returns the relative length if it has one. For lengths that have no relative component, returns 0.0. For a discussion of units, see *Section 4.2, Lengths and units*.

# f:resolve-object-uri

Returns the (relative) path to a `mediaobject` .

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}resolve-object-uri#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl   |

## Synopsis

`f:resolve-object-uri($uri as xs:string) as xs:string`

## Description

Working out the correct URI for a media objects (images, videos, audio) can be quite complicated. For the author, it may be useful or necessary that the URI in the `fileref` attribute correctly point to the object at authoring time. But that URI may not be correct for the generated HTML. In particular, authors may put source files in different directories, media objects may be stored in a common location for several documents even though those documents are published in different locations, etc.

The `f:resolve-object-uri()` takes the URI of the media object as it appears in the source and attempts to resolve that into an appropriate URI for the generated HTML.

# f:section

Is this a section?

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}section#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl                              |
| Used in:    | Not used.  |

## Synopsis

**f:section**( `$node` as element()) as `xs:boolean`

## Description

Returns true if the node is a section, a `section` or `sect 1-5` element.

# f:section-depth

Returns the section depth of a node.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}section-depth#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl                                    |
| Used in:    | modules/functions.xsl                                    |
| Used by:    | f:section-depth()  |

## Synopsis

**f:section-depth**(`$node` as element()?) as `xs:integer`

## Description

Returns the section depth of a node, that is, how many section elements are among its ancestors.

# f:select-mediaobject

Select a media object for presentation.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}select-mediaobject#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xml   |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xml   |

## Synopsis

**f:select-mediaobject**( `$objects` as element()+ ) as `element()`

## Description

This function takes a sequence of media objects ( `imageobject` , `videoobject` , etc.) and returns one for presentation. It processes each element in `m:acceptable-mediaobject` mode. If at least one object is deemed acceptable, the first acceptable object is returned. If none are acceptable, the first object is returned.

# f:select-mediaobject-data

Selects an appropriate data element for a media object.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}select-mediaobject-data#1 |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}select-mediaobject-data#2 |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl (2)  |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl  |
| Used by:    | f:select-mediaobject-data()  |

## Synopsis

**f:select-mediaobject-data**(*\$data* as element(\*) as *element()*?

**f:select-mediaobject-data**(*\$data* as element(\*),  
*\$force* as xs:boolean) as *element()*?

## Description

Once a media object has been selected, one of its data elements has to be selected. This function is responsible for making that selection. It processes each of the data elements in `m:acceptable-mediaobject-data` mode and returns the first acceptable item.

If no acceptable items are found, the function will return the empty sequence if *\$force* is false. If *\$force* is true, the first data element will be returned, even though it was not deemed “acceptable”.



# f:spaces

Returns a string of spaces.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions</a> }spaces#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/functions.xsl, modules/programming.xsl  |
| Used by:    | f:spaces()  |

## Synopsis

**f:spaces**( `$length` as item(\*) ) as `xs:string?`

## Description

This function returns a string of `$length` spaces. If `$length` :

- is empty, an empty sequence is returned.
- is an integer, or castable to an integer, a string of that length is returned. If the length is negative, an empty sequence is returned.
- is anything else, the length of the string value of `$length` is used as the length.

In other words:

- `f:spaces()` is ‘`()`’,
- `f:spaces(0)` is ‘’ (no spaces),
- `f:spaces(-1)` is ‘`()`’,
- `f:spaces(2)` is ‘’ (two spaces),
- `f:spaces("1")` is ‘’ (one space), and
- `f:spaces("test")` is ‘’ (four spaces).

This function accepts a sequence to support the empty sequence. If it’s passed a sequence of more than one item, it treats that as if the string values of the items had been concatenated together. This can have slightly surprising consequences as “`('a', '3', '0')`” will return a string of three spaces whereas “`('0', '3', '0')`” will return a string of thirty.

# f:step-number

Returns the step number of a step in an procedure.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}step-number#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl                                  |
| Used in:    | modules/functions.xsl                                  |
| Used by:    | f:step-numeration()                                    |

## Synopsis

**f:step-number**(`$node` as element(db:step)) as `xs:integer+`

## Description

Returns the step number of step in a procedure. This is always an integer, even if it will be formatted as a letter, roman numeral, or other symbol. For steps nested in side `substeps`, this function returns the fully qualified item number. For example, for the second substep in the fourth substep in the third step of a procedure, it will return `(2, 4, 3)`.

# f:step-numeration

Returns the step numeration format for a step.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}step-numeration#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | modules/titles.xsl, modules/lists.xsl                      |

## Synopsis

**f:step-numeration**( `$node` as element(db:step)) as `xs:string`

## Description

Computes the numeration for the specified step. See `$procedure-step-numeration` .

# f:syntax-highlight

Performs syntax highlighting.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}syntax-highlight#1 |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}syntax-highlight#2 |
|             | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}syntax-highlight#3 |
| Defined in: | highlight.xsl (3)   |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl, highlight.xsl                         |
| Used by:    | f:syntax-highlight(), f:syntax-highlight()                  |

## Synopsis

**f:syntax-highlight**( `$source` as xs:string)

**f:syntax-highlight**( `$source` as xs:string,  
                    `$language` as xs:string)

**f:syntax-highlight**( `$source` as xs:string,  
                    `$options` ,  
                    `$pyoptions` as map(xs:string,xs:string)) as `node()*`

## Description

Verbatim environments that specify a `language` can be syntax highlighted. Syntax highlighting adds additional spans so that, for example, CSS can be used to make keyword bold or quoted strings a different color.

Syntax highlighting requires an extension function. The list of languages that will be syntax highlighted is taken from `$verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages` .

# f:target

Returns the element identified by a particular id.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}target#2 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl                             |
| Used in:    | modules/programming.xsl, modules/links.xsl        |

## Synopsis

```
f:target($id as xs:string,  
        $context as node()) as element()*
```

## Description

The item with the specified ID that is in the same document as `$context` item is returned.

# f:template

Returns the title page template for an element.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}template#2 |
| Defined in: | modules/templates.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | modules/templates.xsl                               |
| Used by:    | t:biblioentry                                       |

## Synopsis

```
f:template( $context as element(),  
            $default as element()) as element()
```

## Description

Returns the title page template that should be used for an element. If no template is found, returns the *\$default* template.

# f:tokenize-on-char

Tokenize a string at a specific character.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}tokenize-on-char#2 |
| Defined in: | modules/functions.xsl                                       |
| Used in:    | modules/tablecals.xsl                                       |

## Synopsis

```
f:tokenize-on-char($string as xs:string,  
                  $char as xs:string) as xs:string*
```

## Description

This function tokenizes a string at a specific character (not a regular expression). If the specified character is a regular expression meta-character, it is automatically escaped.

# f:unique-id

Returns an ID for the element.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}unique-id#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/shared.xsl                                   |
| Used in:    | Not used.  |

## Synopsis

**f:unique-id**( `$node` as element()) as `xs:string`

## Description

This function returns a globally unique ID for the element. This allows a transformation to disambiguate between different elements that happen to have the same `xml:id`, as can occur if transclusion is performed.



# f:verbatim-highlight

Returns the highlight properties for a verbatim environment.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}verbatim-highlight#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/verbatim.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl  |

## Synopsis

**f:verbatim-highlight**( `$context` as element()) as `xs:string*`

## Description

Verbatim elements can be styled in a variety of ways, see *Section 4.3, Verbatim styles*. This function returns the highlight settings for a particular verbatim environment.

If the style for this environment is explicitly “plain”, then no highlight settings are returned (this avoids a bunch of warning messages). Otherwise, if a `db` processing instruction with a `verbatim-highlight` pseudo-attribute is present, it is returned. If there’s no PI, then the default settings for this kind of environment are returned.

# f:verbatim-numbered

Returns true if the listing should be numbered.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}verbatim-numbered#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/verbatim.xml   |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xml, modules/attributes.xml                 |

## Synopsis

**f:verbatim-numbered**(`$context` as element()) as `xs:boolean`

## Description

The `f:verbatim-numbered()` function returns true if the specified verbatim listing should be numbered. This will be true if:

- The `linenumbering` attribute is specified and has the value `numbered`,
- the element's name is listed in `$verbatim-numbered-elements`, or
- a `db` processing instruction with a `verbatim-numbered` pseudo-attribute that is true is specified.

There are two overriding conditions that will force the value to be false: first, if the `linenumbering` attribute is specified and has the value `unnumbered`, the listing will not be numbered. Second if the listing has a `db` processing instruction with a `verbatim-style` pseudo attribute that specifies the “plain” style. Listings in the plain style cannot be numbered, attempting to do so will generate a warning message from the stylesheets.

# f:verbatim-style

Returns the style of a verbatim listing.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}verbatim-style#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/verbatim.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl, modules/attributes.xsl              |

## Synopsis

**f:verbatim-style**( `$context` as element()) as `xs:string`

## Description

The `f:verbatim-style()` function returns the style of presentation that should be used for the specified verbatim listing.

If a `db` processing instruction with a `verbatim-style` pseudo-attribute is present, the value of that pseudo-attribute will be returned. Otherwise, it will be “`lines`” if the element’s name is listed in `$verbatim-line-style`, “`plain`” if the element’s name is listed in `$verbatim-plain-style`, or “`raw`”.

# f:verbatim-trim-trailing

Return true if trailing blank lines should be trimmed.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}verbatim-trim-trailing#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/verbatim.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/verbatim.xsl  |

## Synopsis

**f:verbatim-trim-trailing**( `$context` as element()) as `xs:boolean`

## Description

This function examines a verbatim environment, the `$context`, and returns true if trailing blank lines should be trimmed from it. A `db` processing instruction with a `verbatim-trim-trailing` pseudo-attribute may be used to override the `$verbatim-trim-trailing-blank-lines` parameter on a case-by-case basis.

# f:xlink-style

Returns the XLink style for this document.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}xlink-style#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/xlink.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | main.xsl, modules/xlink.xsl                            |

## Synopsis

**f:xlink-style**( `$document` as document-node()) as `xs:string`

## Description

The stylesheets support XLink extended links. See `$xlink-style` for more details.

# f:xpointer-idref

Parses an XPointer for a same-document ID reference.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Function:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/functions}xpointer-idref#1 |
| Defined in: | modules/xlink.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/xlink.xsl   |

## Synopsis

**f:xpointer-idref**( `$xpointer` ) as `xs:string?`

## Description

In DocBook, there are generally two ways to refer to other elements in the current document by ID: using the `linkend` (or `linkends`) attribute or using the `xlink:href` attribute.

The `f:xpointer-idref()` function returns the ID portion of an XPointer that is a reference to another ID in the current document.

In other words:

- `f:xpointer-idref('#foo')` is `foo`,
- `f:xpointer-idref('id(foo)')` is `foo`,
- and `f:xpointer-idref('http://example.org/#foo')` is the empty sequence.

# ext:cwd

Returns the current working directory.

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| Function: | {http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt}cwd#0 |
|-----------|---|

## Synopsis

**ext:cwd()** as `xs:string`

## Description

This extension function returns the current working directory from which the processor was executed.

# ext:image-metadata

Return intrinsic properties of an image.

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| Function: | { <a href="http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt">http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt</a> }image-metadata#1 |
|-----------|---|

## Synopsis

**ext:image-metadata**(`$filename` as xs:string) as `map(*)`

## Description

This extension function returns a map of metadata properties about the image, including its intrinsic size: its width and height in pixels. If the size can be determined, the map returned will have a “`width`” key whose value is the width of the image and a “`height`” key whose value is the height of the image. Both sizes will be integer values.

This function uses the *metadata-extractor* library. The map may contain other properties as well.

- If the media was successfully parsed with *metadata-extractor*, all of the properties identified by the extractor will be returned. Each property name will be converted to lowercase and spaces will be replaced with hyphens. (In other words, a property with the tag name “Palette Colour Count” will appear in the map with a key of “palette-colour-count”.)

Property values that appear to be data/time values<sup>1</sup> will be converted to strings that are valid ISO 8601 date/time values. Any control characters that can’t appear in XML but that appear in a value will be replaced with Unicode references, `\u`xxxx. For example, a null byte will be replaced with `\u0000`.

- If the media isn’t successfully parsed with *metadata-extractor*,
  - If it appears to be a PDF document, the function will search for the “`MediaBox`” or “`CropBox`” in the first 100 lines of the PDF. If either is found, its dimensions are used to calculate the width and height. If both are present, `CropBox` is preferred.

---

<sup>1</sup> A value that matches the regular expression “`^\d\d\d\d:\d\d:\d\d \d\d:\d\d:\d\d$`” is assumed to be a date/time. This is the format of date/time values used in EXIF metadata for most properties that have a date/time value.



- If it appears to be an SVG document, the function will search for `width` and `height` attributes on the root element. All of the attributes of the root element will be returned as properties, using Clark names.

If the `width` and `height` properties exist, they will always be integers. This means that if an image has a property with the name `width` or `height` and its value isn't an integer, it will not be returned.

If the `$debug` parameter includes the token `image-properties`, the stylesheets will print every property returned in an `xsl:message`.

# ext:image-properties

Return intrinsic properties of an image.

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| Function: | {http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt}image-properties#1 |
|-----------|--|

## Synopsis

**ext:image-properties**( `$filename` as xs:string) as `map(*)`

## Description

This extension function returns the intrinsic size of an image: its width and height in pixels. If the size can be determined, the map returned will have a “`width`” key whose value is the width of the image and a “`height`” key whose value is the height of the image. Both sizes will be integral numbers of pixels.

The `ext:image-metadata()` function provides better results. It should be preferred unless the *metadata-extractor* libraries are unavailable.

# ext:pygmentize

Syntax highlight a listing with pygmentize.

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| Function: | {http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt}pygmentize#1 |
|           | {http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt}pygmentize#2 |
|           | {http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt}pygmentize#3 |

## Synopsis

```
ext:pygmentize( $listing as xs:string) as xs:string
```

```
ext:pygmentize( $listing as xs:string,  
                $options as item()) as xs:string
```

```
ext:pygmentize( $listing as xs:string,  
                $options as item(),  
                $pygments-options as map(xs:string,xs:string)) as xs:string
```

## Description

This extension function runs the `pygmentize` command to add syntax highlighting to a listing.

The second argument can either be map, in which case the key-value pairs of the map constitute the options, or it can be a single string. If it's a single string, it's interpreted as if it was a map with the key “`language`” and the string as the value.

The third argument must be a map. Each key-value pair will be passed to `pygmentize` as “`-P key = value`”.

The function returns the string output from `pygmentize`. It must be parsed with `parse-xml` if you wish to process it as XML.

Be aware that `pygmentize` strips leading blank lines off of the source listing. If you're selecting portions of a listing with XInclude, make sure not to select leading blank lines in the listing if you are trying to accurately count the lines.

# ext:pygmentize-available

Returns true if pygmentize is available.

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| Function: | { <a href="http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt">http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt</a> }pygmentize-available#0 |
|-----------|---|

## Synopsis

**ext:pygmentize-available()** as `xs:boolean`

## Description

In order to run Pygments on listings, the `ext:pygmentize()` extension function must be available *and* the `pygmentize` command must be available on the host system.

This function returns true if it successfully finds the `pygmentize` command on the system path.

# ext:xinclude

Performs XInclude processing.

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| Function: | {http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt}xinclude#1 |
|           | {http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt}xinclude#2 |

## Synopsis

**ext:xinclude**( `$node` as node()) as `node()`\*

**ext:xinclude**( `$node` as node(),  
          `$options` as map(xs:QName, item()\*)) as `node()`\*

## Description

Performs XInclude processing on `node` and all of its descendants. The options “`fixup-xml-base`” and “`fixup-xml-lang`” are `true()` by default.

# ext:validate-with-relax-ng

Returns the current working directory.

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| Function: | {http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt}validate-with-relax-ng#2 |
|           | {http://docbook.org/extensions/xslt}validate-with-relax-ng#3 |

## Synopsis

```
ext:validate-with-relax-ng( $node as node(),  
                           $schema as item()) as map(xs:string, item())
```

```
ext:validate-with-relax-ng(  
    $node as node(),  
    $schema as item(),  
    $options as map(xs:string, xs:string)) as map(xs:string,  
    item())
```

## Description

This extension function validates the `node` provided against the `schema`. The `schema` can be either a string (the URI of the RELAX NG grammar file) or a node (a RELAX NG grammar document). There is no support for the RELAX NG Compact Syntax at this time.

The available options are `assert-valid` which defaults to `true()` and `dtd-compatibility` which isn't actually supported yet.

If `assert-valid` is `true()` and the document is not valid according to the grammar provided, an exception is raised.

If `assert-valid` is `false()`, or the document is valid, the map returned will contain the following keys:

`valid`

A boolean indicating whether or not the document was valid.

`document`

The validated document. Today, this always returns the same node, but it may eventually return an augmented document.

## errors

An array of maps containing the `type` ( `warning` , `error` , or `fatal-error` ), `message` , `line` , and `column` where an error occurred. If the document is valid, the `errors` key will not be present.





## IV. Template reference

# t:biblioentry

Format a `biblioentry` element.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}biblioentry |
| Defined in: | modules/templates.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | modules/bibliography.xsl                             |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:biblioentry"/>
```

## Description

Unlike `bibliomixed`, where the author is expected to provide most of the formatting, `biblioentry` is a bag of metadata. On the one hand, this opens up the possibility of producing different bibliographic styles from the same entry. On the other hand, it greatly complicates formatting.

The default `t:biblioentry` template uses a header template (see *Section 4.5, Templates*).

# t:bottom-nav

Generate bottom-of-page navigation links.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}bottom-nav |
| Defined in: | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl                           |
| Used in:    | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl                           |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:bottom-nav">
  <xsl:param name="node" as="element()"/>
  <xsl:param name="prev" as="element()?"/>
  <xsl:param name="next" as="element()?"/>
  <xsl:param name="up" as="element()?"/>
  <xsl:param name="top" as="element()?"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

This template generates the bottom-of-page `nav` element. When chunking is performed, this should provide links between pages.

# t:chunk-cleanup

Cleanup the HTML markup for a DocBook document.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}chunk-cleanup |
| Defined in: | drivers.xsl  |
| Used in:    | docbook.xsl, drivers.xsl                               |
| Used by:    | t:postprocess  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:chunk-cleanup">
  <xsl:param name="source" as="document-node()"/>
  <xsl:param name="docbook" as="document-node()"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

This mode performs cleanup tasks on the HTML document that results from calling `t:process`. This process moves footnotes and annotations when necessary, generates navigation elements, etc.

Most customizations can simply call `t:docbook`; you only need to call the `t:preprocess`, `t:process`, `t:postprocess` (or `t:chunk-cleanup` and `t:chunk-output`) if you need to perform very specialized cleanup tasks.

# t:chunk-footnotes

Processes footnotes in a chunk.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}chunk-footnotes |
| Defined in: | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl                                |
| Used in:    | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl                                |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:chunk-footnotes">  
  <xsl:param name="footnotes" as="element()"/>  
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

When chunking is being performed (see *Section 2.6, “Chunked” output*), all of the footnotes that should appear in a chunk are processed with this template.

# t:chunk-output

Generate chunked output for a DocBook document.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}chunk-output |
| Defined in: | drivers.xsl   |
| Used in:    | docbook.xsl, drivers.xsl                              |
| Used by:    | t:postprocess   |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:chunk-output">
  <xsl:param name="source" as="document-node()"/>
  <xsl:param name="docbook" as="document-node()"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

This mode processes the `$persistent-toc` if requested and generates individual documents for each chunk. Like the XPath `transform` function, this template returns a map. You must process the map to store the documents.

Most customizations can simply call `t:docbook`; you only need to call the `t:preprocess`, `t:process`, `t:postprocess` (or `t:chunk-output` and `t:chunk-output`) if you need to perform very specialized cleanup tasks.

# t:docbook

Process a DocBook document.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}docbook |
| Defined in: | drivers.xsl                                      |
| Used in:    | Not used.  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:docbook">  
  <xsl:param name="source" as="document-node()"/>  
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

This mode processes a DocBook document. It runs the `t:preprocess` template to normalize the source, processes the normalized source in the `m:docbook` mode with the `t:process` template, and runs the `t:postprocess` template to clean up the HTML and generate the chunks (if necessary).

# t:generate-index

Generate a back-of-the-book style index.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}generate-index |
| Defined in: | modules/index.xsl                                       |
| Used in:    | modules/index.xsl                                       |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:generate-index">
  <xsl:param name="scope"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

This template is called when an empty `index` tag is found the document and automatic index generation is enabled. Automatic index generation is enabled if either the `$generate-index` is true or a `db` processing instruction with an `autoindex` pseudo-attribute is true. If the `autoindex` pseudo-attribute is explicitly false, automatic index generation is suppressed for the index in which it appears.



# t:imagemap

Process image map areas in an `imageobjectco` .

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}imagemap |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl                               |
| Used in:    | modules/objects.xsl                               |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:imagemap">
  <xsl:param name="intrinsicwidth"/>
  <xsl:param name="intrinsicheight"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

If callouts are provided for an image with `imageobjectco` , the `t:imagemap` template is called to transform the areas into an HTML image map.

# t:index-zone-reference

Process index zone references.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}index-zone-reference |
| Defined in: | modules/index.xsl   |
| Used in:    | modules/index.xsl   |
| Used by:    | t:index-zone-reference  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:index-zone-reference">
  <xsl:param name="scope"/>
  <xsl:param name="role"/>
  <xsl:param name="type"/>
  <xsl:param name="lang"/>
  <xsl:param name="zones" as="xs:string*" />
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

This template is called to generate index references for terms that have a `zone` attribute. It is only called when generating an index.

# t:inline

Process an inline element.

Template: {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}inline

Defined in: modules/inlines.xml

Used in: modules/bibliography.xml, modules/glossary.xml, modules/info.xml, modules/blocks.xml, modules/verbatim.xml, modules/inlines.xml, modules/links.xml, modules/publishers.xml

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:inline">
  <xsl:param name="namemap"/>
  <xsl:param name="class" as="xs:string"/>
  <xsl:param name="local-name-as-class" as="xs:boolean"/>
  <xsl:param name="content"/>
  <xsl:param name="extra-attributes" as="attribute()"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

All of the inline elements are processed by `t:inline`. This provides a common place to handle the fact that any of them might be a link. Several parameters exist to handle variations in presentation:

`namemap`

Maps the element to a particular HTML element. Defaults to `span`.

`class`

A list of tokens that should be added to the element's `class` attribute.

`local-name-as-class`

If this is true, the local name of the DocBook element being processed will be added to the classes.

`content`

The element content. By default, this is obtained by applying XSLT templates to the element's content.

## extra-attributes

Extra attributes to be added to the element.

# t:person-name

Formats a personal name.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}person-name |
| Defined in: | modules/info.xsl                                     |
| Used in:    | modules/info.xsl                                     |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:person-name">  
  <xsl:param name="style" as="xs:string"/>  
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

This template formats a personal name according to the specified style. This template must only be called when the current context item is a `personname`. The `personname` element can be used in two different ways, it can just contain the name:

```
<personname>Norman Walsh</personname>
```

or it can contain the name with markup:

```
<personname><givenname>Norman</givenname>  
<surname>Walsh</surname></personname>
```

How the name is formatted depends on which form of markup is used and which style is selected. Several styles are supported:

1. If the name contains no markup, it is simply formatted as is.
2. If the style is “`FAMILY-given`”, it is formatted with `t:person-name-family-given` and generally produces the family name in upper case followed by the given name. For example: “WALSH Norman”.
3. If the style is “`last-first`”, it is formatted with `t:person-name-last-first` and generally produces the family name followed by the given name separated by a comma. For example: “Walsh, Norman”.

4. If the style is “first-last”, it is formatted with `t:person-name-first-last` and generally produces the given name followed by the family name. For example: “Norman Walsh”.
5. Any other value raises `dbe:INVALID-NAME-STYLE`.

### Given names



Historically, DocBook used `firstname` for the given name of a person. In DocBook 5.1, the `givenname` element was introduced as an alternative. The stylesheets treat them identically.

The stylesheets attempt to determine what style to use for each `personname`:

1. First, by looking at that the `role` attribute on that element. If any of styles from the `$v:personal-name-styles` list appear in the role, that style will be selected. (If more than one style appears, the results are undefined.)
2. If the `personname` doesn't identify a style, and if it's a child of `author`, `editor`, or `othercredit`, the `role` attribute of its parent is inspected.
3. If a style still hasn't been selected and the in-context language localization file contains a “`personname`” key, the value of that key is taken as the style.
4. Failing all those options, the `$default-personal-name-style` is selected.

Personal names are notoriously complicated (see *Names*). DocBook includes several tags for identifying parts of names:

`firstname` or `givenname`

for a given name,

`surname`

for a family name,

`lineage`

for lineage (such as “Jr” or “III”),

`honorific`

for an honorific title (such as “Dr” or “Ms”), and

othername

for everything else.

In all likelihood, if your document contains a variety of personal names, you will need to use roles to disambiguate special cases and you will have to provide alternate or additional templates to format them.

# t:person-name-family-given

Formats a personal name in the “FAMILY-given” style.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}person-name-family-given |
| Defined in: | modules/info.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/info.xsl  |
| Used by:    | t:person-name   |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:person-name-family-given"/>
```

## Description

The “FAMILY-given” style formats a personal name as the family name ( `surname` ) in upper-case, followed by the first given name (if there is one), followed by the text “ [FAMILY given] ”. See `t:person-name` .

*Example 1.1, The FAMILY-given name style* shows an example of a personal name to be formatted with the “FAMILY-given” style.

```
<para>The author is  
<personname role="FAMILY-given">  
  <givenname>Norman</givenname>  
  <surname>Walsh</surname>  
  <othername>David</othername>  
</personname>.</para>
```

### Example 1.1 The FAMILY-given name style

That would be formatted as:

The author is WALSH Norman [FAMILY Given].



# t:person-name-first-last

Formats a personal name in the “first-last” style.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}person-name-first-last |
| Defined in: | modules/info.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/info.xsl  |
| Used by:    | t:person-name   |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:person-name-first-last"/>
```

## Description

The “first-last” style formats a personal name as: the first `honorific`, followed by the given name, followed possibly by the “middle name”, followed by the `surname`, followed by the `lineage`. See `t:person-name`.

If an `othername` is provided and if `$othername-in-middle` is true, then the first `othername` will be treated as a “middle name” and presented between the given and family names.

*Example 1.1*, *The first-last name style* shows an example of a personal name to be formatted with the “first-last” style.

```
<para>The author is
<personname role="first-last">
  <givenname>Norman</givenname>
  <surname>Walsh</surname>
  <othername>David</othername>
</personname>.</para>
```

### Example 1.1 The first-last name style

That would be formatted as:

The author is Norman David Walsh.

# t:person-name-last-first

Formats a personal name in the “last-first” style.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}person-name-last-first |
| Defined in: | modules/info.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/info.xsl  |
| Used by:    | t:person-name   |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:person-name-last-first"/>
```

## Description

The “last-first” style formats a personal name as the family name ( `surname` ) followed by the first given name (if there is one). If both a family name and a given name are present, they are separated by a comma. See `t:person-name` .

*Example 1.1, The last-first name style* shows an example of a personal name to be formatted with the “last-first” style.

```
<para>The author is
<personname role="last-first">
  <givenname>Norman</givenname>
  <surname>Walsh</surname>
  <othername>David</othername>
</personname>.</para>
```

### Example 1.1 The last-first name style

That would be formatted as:

The author is Walsh, Norman.

# t:person-name-list

Formats a sequence of personal names.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}person-name-list |
| Defined in: | modules/info.xsl  |
| Used in:    | modules/bibliography.xsl, modules/info.xsl                |
| Used by:    | t:person-name-list  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:person-name-list">
  <xsl:param name="person.list"/>
  <xsl:param name="person.count"/>
  <xsl:param name="count"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

Formats a sequence of names:

- If the sequence consists of a single name, it is formatted.
- If the sequence consists of exactly two names, they are formatted with “and” between them where “and” is taken from the in-scope language localization file. It is the item with the key “`author-sep2`”.
- If the sequence consists of more than two names, all but the last are separated by “, ” (the localization item with the key “`author-sep`”). The last is separated by “, and” (the localization item with the key “`author-seplast`”).

# t:preprocess

Prepare a DocBook document for processing.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}preprocess |
| Defined in: | drivers.xsl   |
| Used in:    | docbook.xsl, drivers.xsl                            |
| Used by:    | t:docbook   |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:preprocess">
  <xsl:param name="source" as="document-node()"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

A lot of variation is possible in DocBook documents. In addition, the stylesheets have features that require combining several documents together (see `$bibliography-collection`, for example).

The `t:preprocess` template runs a pipeline of transformations that normalize the sources. This normalized source has much less variation which simplifies the templates used for main processing.

Most customizations can simply call `t:docbook`; you only need to call the `t:preprocess`, `t:process`, `t:postprocess` if you need to perform very specialized cleanup tasks.

# t:process

Process a DocBook document.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}process |
| Defined in: | drivers.xml                                      |
| Used in:    | docbook.xml, drivers.xml                         |
| Used by:    | t:docbook  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:process">
  <xsl:param name="source" as="document-node()"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

This mode processes a *normalized* document. You must call `t:preprocess` before calling `t:process` or you will get erroneous results.

Most customizations can simply call `t:docbook`; you only need to call the `t:preprocess`, `t:process`, `t:postprocess` if you need to perform very specialized cleanup tasks.

# t:postprocess

Postprocess a DocBook document.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}postprocess |
| Defined in: | drivers.xsl  |
| Used in:    | drivers.xsl  |
| Used by:    | t:docbook  |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:postprocess">
  <xsl:param name="source" as="document-node()"/>
  <xsl:param name="docbook" as="document-node()"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

This mode performs cleanup tasks on the HTML document that results from calling `t:process` by calling `t:chunk-cleanup` and `t:chunk-output`. This template returns a map.

Most customizations can simply call `t:docbook`; you only need to call the `t:preprocess`, `t:process`, `t:postprocess` if you need to perform very specialized cleanup tasks.

# t:table-footnotes

Process table footnotes.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}table-footnotes |
| Defined in: | modules/footnotes.xsl                                    |
| Used in:    | modules/tablecals.xsl, modules/tablehtml.xsl             |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:table-footnotes">
  <xsl:param name="footnotes" as="element(db:footnote)+"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

The `t:table-footnotes` template is called to process footnotes at the bottom of a table.



# t:top-nav

Generate top-of-page navigation links.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}top-nav |
| Defined in: | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl                        |
| Used in:    | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl                        |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:top-nav">
  <xsl:param name="node" as="element()"/>
  <xsl:param name="prev" as="element()?"/>
  <xsl:param name="next" as="element()?"/>
  <xsl:param name="up" as="element()?"/>
  <xsl:param name="top" as="element()?"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

This template generates the top-of-page `nav` element. When chunking is performed, this should provide links between pages.

# t:xlink

Supports hypertext linking.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Template:   | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/templates}xlink |
| Defined in: | modules/xlink.xsl                              |
| Used in:    | modules/inlines.xsl                            |
| Used by:    | t:inline                                       |

## Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="t:xlink">
  <xsl:param name="content"/>
</xsl:template>
```

## Description

In DocBook, most elements can be links. The `t:xlink` template is called for each element that might be participating in a link. This includes both simple links (any inline element with an `xlink:href` attribute) and extended links.

## V. Mode reference

# m:acceptable-mediaobject

Selects media objects for presentation.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}acceptable-mediaobject |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl (4)                                     |

## Description

A `mediaobject` may contain several alternatives (different formats, for example, or different resolutions). The alternatives will be processed in the `m:acceptable-mediaobject` mode before presentation. This mode must either return the media object, if it's appropriate for the rendering being produced, or the empty sequence, if it is not.

# m:acceptable-mediaobject-data

Selects media object data elements that may be used.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}acceptable-mediaobject-data |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl (4)  |

## Description

Like the `m:acceptable-mediaobject` mode, this mode is used to determine which alternative media objects (in the case of this mode, the media object data elements, such as `imagedata`) should be considered.

By default, this mode just compares the media object URI extension with the list of `$mediaobject-exclude-extensions` and rejects elements that have URIs that match.

# m:annotation-content

Mode for the content of annotations.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}annotation-content |
| Defined in: | modules/annotations.xsl                                 |

## Description

Annotations, like footnotes, have markers and wrappers that are necessary to support their presentation. The `m:annotation-content` mode is used to process the actual body of the annotation.

# m:ansi

Mode for processing funcsynopsis elements in the “ANSI” style.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }ansi |
| Defined in: | modules/programming.xml (14)  |

## Description

The `funcsynopsis` element has several possible renderings. This mode is used when the “ANSI” style of rendering has been selected and a non-tabular layout is being used.

See also: `m:ansi-table` , `m:kr` , `m:kr-table` , `$funcsynopsis-default-style` , `$funcsynopsis-table-threshold` , and `$funcsynopsis-trailing-punctuation` .

# m:ansi-table

Mode for processing funcsynopsis elements in the “ANSI” style.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}ansi-table |
| Defined in: | modules/programming.xml (14)                    |

## Description

The `funcsynopsis` element has several possible renderings. This mode is used when the “ANSI” style of rendering has been selected and a table will be used for layout.

See also: `m:ansi`, `m:kr`, `m:kr-table`, `$funcsynopsis-default-style`, `$funcsynopsis-table-threshold`, and `$funcsynopsis-trailing-punctuation`.



# m:attributes

Mode for processing attributes.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}attributes |
| Defined in: | modules/attributes.xsl (26)                     |

## Description

Each DocBook element in the source document produces a primary HTML element in the result document. The attributes associated with that primary element are obtained by processing the DocBook element in the `m:attributes` mode.

# m:biblioentry

Mode for processing `biblioentry` bibliographic entries.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }biblioentry |
| Defined in: | modules/bibliography.xsl (11)  |

## Description

DocBook bibliographic entries come in two forms: raw and cooked (<https://tdg.docbook.org/tdg/5.2/ch02.html#s.bibliography>). The `biblioentry` form is the “raw” form. The `m:biblioentry` mode is used to process these elements.

# m:bibliomixed

Mode for processing `bibliomixed` bibliographic entries.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }bibliomixed |
| Defined in: | modules/bibliography.xsl (7)   |

## Description

DocBook bibliographic entries come in two forms: raw and cooked (<https://tdg.docbook.org/tdg/5.2/ch02.html#s.bibliography>). The `bibliomixed` form is the “cooked” form. The `m:bibliomixed` mode is used to process these elements.

# m:callout-bug

Mode for producing callout marks.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}callout-bug |
| Defined in: | modules/verbatim.xsl (3)                         |

## Description

Callouts are processed in this mode to produce the callout marks (or “bugs”) used to indicate cross references between the callouts and their corresponding areas. This mode should only produce the mark, for example “①”. See [m:callout-link](#).

By default, callouts are numbered sequentially from 1 within each listing. However, a [db](#) processing instruction placed in the [areaspec](#) can specify a different starting number. If the [starting-callout-number](#) pseudo-attribute is an integer, that’s used as the starting number. If it has the special value “[continues](#)”, then numbering continues sequentially after the last callout number used in the preceding verbatim listing.

# m:callout-link

Mode for producing callout links.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }callout-link |
| Defined in: | modules/lists.xsl (2)   |

## Description

Callouts in a `calloutlist` can link back to the corresponding point in the listing or on the image. This mode is used to produce those links.

# m:chunk-cleanup

Post-process HTML chunks.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}chunk-cleanup |
| Defined in: | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl (13)                     |

## Description

Every HTML chunk is processed with the `m:chunk-cleanup` mode. This mode makes sure that footnotes and annotations appear in the chunks where their references appear, adds navigation to the top and bottom of each chunk, etc. See *Section 2.6, “Chunked” output*.

# m:chunk-filename

Selects the chunk filename.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}chunk-filename |
| Defined in: | modules/chunk.xsl (19)                              |

## Description

Every element that is identified as a chunk, see *Section 2.6, “Chunked” output*, will be called in the `m:chunk-filename` mode to obtain the filename for that chunk.

# m:chunk-output

Performs the final-pass of processing on chunks.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}chunk-output |
| Defined in: | modules/chunk-output.xsl (6)                      |

## Description

Chunks (see *Section 2.6*, “*Chunked*” *output*) are constructed in several passes. The last pass is in the `m:chunk-output` mode. This mode makes last minute adjustments and produces the individual chunk documents.



# m:chunk-title

Generates the page title for the chunk.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}chunk-title |
| Defined in: | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl (4)                    |

## Description

The page title, the `title` in the HTML `head`, is generated by processing the heading in this mode. This mode is responsible for removing markup from the title.

# m:chunk-write

Create result documents for chunks.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}chunk-write |
| Defined in: | docbook.xsl                                      |

## Description

When all of the chunk processing is finished, each chunk is processed in `m:chunk-write` mode. By default, this mode creates XSL result documents for each chunk.

# m:copyright-years

Mode for processing copyright years.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}copyright-years |
| Defined in: | modules/info.xsl                                     |

## Description

The `year` elements in a `copyright` are processed in this mode. This mode handles the separation (and possible collapsing) of years.

See also `$copyright-year-range-separator` and `$copyright-year-separator`, and `$copyright-collapse-years`.

# m:crossref

Produce a cross-reference to the element.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}crossref |
| Defined in: | modules/xref.xsl                              |

## Description

The `m:crossref` mode is used to generate a cross-reference.

# m:crossref-inherit-separator

Produce the inherit separator.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}crossref-inherit-separator |
| Defined in: | modules/xref.xsl  |

## Description

The `m:crossref-inherit-separator` mode is used to generate the text that should follow the element when an inherited reference is used.

# m:crossref-label

Produce the label in a cross-reference.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}crossref-label |
| Defined in: | modules/xref.xsl (2)                                |

## Description

The `m:crossref-label` mode is used to generate the label in a cross-reference.

# m:crossref-label-separator

Produce the cross-reference label separator.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}crossref-label-separator |
| Defined in: | modules/xref.xsl  |

## Description

The `m:crossref-label-separator` mode is used to generate the separator between a label and what follows it in a cross-reference.

# m:crossref-number

Produce the number in a cross-reference.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}crossref-number |
| Defined in: | modules/xref.xsl                                     |

## Description

The `m:crossref-number` mode is used to generate the number in a cross-reference.



# m:crossref-number-separator

Produce the cross-reference number separator.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}crossref-number-separator |
| Defined in: | modules/xref.xsl   |

## Description

The `m:crossref-number-separator` mode is used to generate the separator between a number and what follows it in a cross-reference.

# m:crossref-prefix

Produce the cross-reference prefix.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}crossref-prefix |
| Defined in: | modules/xref.xsl                                     |

## Description

The `m:crossref-prefix` mode is used to generate any text that precedes a cross reference.

# m:crossref-suffix

Produce the cross-reference suffix.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}crossref-suffix |
| Defined in: | modules/xref.xsl                                     |

## Description

The `m:crossref-suffix` mode is used to generate any text that follows a cross reference.

# m:crossref-title

Produce the title in a cross-reference.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}crossref-title |
| Defined in: | modules/xref.xsl (11)                               |

## Description

The `m:crossref-title` mode formats the title in a cross-reference.

# m:details

Produce details about a media object.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }details |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl (3)  |

## Description

This mode is used to produce the details about a media object, such as a long description.

# m:details-attribute

Produce the short summary for a media object.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}details-attribute |
| Defined in: | modules/objects.xsl (4)                                |

## Description

This mode is used to produce a short detail summary about a media object. This is most often used as the alt text for the object.

# m:docbook

The primary mode for processing DocBook elements.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}docbook  |
| Defined in: | main.xml (2), modules/admonitions.xml, modules/annotations.xml (2), modules/attributes.xml (4), modules/bibliography.xml (5), modules/blocks.xml (18), modules/components.xml (2), modules/divisions.xml, modules/footnotes.xml (3), modules/glossary.xml (10), modules/index.xml (12), modules/info.xml (15), modules/inlines.xml (104), modules/links.xml (6), modules/lists.xml (22), modules/msgset.xml (7), modules/objects.xml (14), modules/programming.xml (23), modules/publishers.xml (3), modules/refentry.xml (11), modules/sections.xml (2), modules/tablecals.xml (8), modules/tablehtml.xml (4), modules/templates.xml, modules/toc.xml (3), modules/unhandled.xml (2), modules/verbatim.xml (10), modules/xlink.xml (4) |
| Used by:    | t:index-zone-reference, t:person-name-list, t:xlink, t:inline, t:person-name  |

## Description

The `m:docbook` mode is the primary mode for processing DocBook elements. Critically, this means that if you import the DocBook stylesheets and wish to override some of the templates, you *must* make sure that those templates are defined in the `m:docbook` mode.

# m:footnote-number

Mode for generating footnote numbers.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}footnote-number |
| Defined in: | modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl, modules/footnotes.xsl     |

## Description

A `footnote` processed in `m:footnote-number` mode renders the footnote number (or other symbol) associated with that footnote.



# m:footnotes

Mode for processing footnotes.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}footnotes |
| Defined in: | modules/footnotes.xsl                          |

## Description

Perhaps unsurprisingly, `footnote` elements are processed in `m:footnotes`. On the first pass, they're rendered inline with appropriate footnote markers. The “chunk cleanup” pass moves them to an appropriate location.

# m:generate-titlepage

Generate a title page.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}generate-titlepage |
| Defined in: | modules/templates.xsl                                   |

## Description

All “block” elements that have a `title` (or another feature that constitutes a title) are processed in the `m:generate-titlepage` mode to generate their “title page”. Don’t be misled by the term “title page”. For many elements, the title page consists of nothing more than a single header element.

# m:headline

Produce a headline title.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}headline |
| Defined in: | modules/titles.xsl                            |

## Description

This mode produces the “headline” title for an element. This generally appears in the text where the element is formatted, but may also occur in the table of contents, the index, and other places.

# m:headline-label

Produce the label for a headline title.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}headline-label |
| Defined in: | modules/titles.xsl (7)                              |

## Description

The `m:headline-label` mode is used to generate the label in a headline.

# m:headline-label-separator

Produce the headline label separator.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}headline-label-separator |
| Defined in: | modules/titles.xsl  |

## Description

The `m:headline-label-separator` mode is used to generate the separator that follows a label in a headline.

# m:headline-number

Produce the headline number.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}headline-number |
| Defined in: | modules/titles.xsl (5)                               |

## Description

The `m:headline-number` mode is used to generate the number in a headline.

# m:headline-number-separator

Produce the headline number separator.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}headline-number-separator |
| Defined in: | modules/titles.xsl   |

## Description

The `m:headline-number-separator` mode is used to generate the number separator in a headline.

# m:headline-prefix

Generate the headline prefix.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}headline-prefix |
| Defined in: | modules/titles.xsl                                   |

## Description

The `m:headline-prefix` mode is used to generate any text that should precede the text of a headline.



# m:headline-suffix

Produce the headline suffix.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}headline-suffix |
| Defined in: | modules/titles.xsl                                   |

## Description

The `m:headline-suffix` mode is used to generate any text that should follow the text of a headline.

# m:headline-title

Produce the headline title.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}headline-title |
| Defined in: | modules/titles.xsl (6)                              |

## Description

The `m:headline-title` mode is used to format the title element in a headline.

# m:highlight-options

Determine the syntax highlighting options for an element.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}highlight-options |
| Defined in: | modules/verbatim.xsl                                   |

## Description

A verbatim element that will be syntax highlighted is processed in this mode to determine the options for the syntax highlighter. The template must return a map. The default template returns the `language` attribute if one is present.

# m:html-body-script

Add script elements to the end of a document.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}html-body-script |
| Defined in: | modules/head.xsl                                      |

## Description

One way to assure that JavaScript will only be invoked by the user agent after the DOM tree has been constructed is to put the script elements for that code at the end of the file.

The root element of each result document is formatted once in the `m:html-body-script` mode. Any elements constructed in this mode will be added to the end of the HTML `body`. The built-in implementation does nothing; this mode exists as an extensibility point. See also `m:html-head-script`.

# m:html-head

Construct the HTML `head` element.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}html-head |
| Defined in: | modules/head.xsl (6)                           |

## Description

The `m:html-head` mode is used to produce the `head` element. This should include all of the metadata, links, scripts, etc. necessary to render the document correctly.

It is not supposed to be necessary to override this template. You can customize what is produced with the `m:html-head-script`, `m:html-head-links`, and `m:html-head-last` modes.

The order of elements produced in the `head` is:

1. Elements generated by the stylesheets automatically ( `title`, scripts, links, and other elements).
2. Elements generated in `m:html-head-script` mode.
3. Elements generated in `m:html-head-links` mode.
4. Elements in the HTML namespace that are in the source document's `info`.
5. Elements generated in `m:html-head-last` mode.

In addition, elements generated in `m:html-body-script` occur near the end of the HTML `body` element.

# m:html-head-last

Add elements to the end of the head of a document.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}html-head-last |
| Defined in: | modules/head.xsl                                    |

## Description

Any elements constructed in `m:html-head-last` mode will be added to the very end of the HTML `head` element. The built-in implementation does nothing; this mode exists as an extensibility point.

# m:html-head-links

Add link elements to the head of a document.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}html-head-links |
| Defined in: | modules/head.xsl                                     |

## Description

Any elements constructed in `m:html-head-links` mode will be added to the HTML `head` element. The built-in implementation does nothing; this mode exists as an extensibility point.

# m:html-head-script

Add link elements to the head of a document.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}html-head-script |
| Defined in: | modules/head.xsl                                      |

## Description

Any elements constructed in `m:html-head-script` mode will be added to the HTML `head` element. The built-in implementation does nothing; this mode exists as an extensibility point.



# m:htmltable

Mode for processing HTML table elements.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}htmltable |
| Defined in: | modules/tablehtml.xsl (2)                      |

## Description

Where DocBook uses the HTML table model, it copies the definitions of the table elements (and the attributes on those elements) from HTML. The `m:htmltable` mode simply copies those elements and attributes to the result. When processing the contents of table cells, processing switches back to `m:docbook` mode.

# m:index-div

Mode for generating divisions in an index.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}index-div |
| Defined in: | modules/index.xsl                              |

## Description

Index processing, that is, the process of *generating* an index, involves collecting all of the `indexterm`s together, collating them, and rendering them.

The terms are grouped alphabetically and each group is processed in the `m:index-div` mode.

# m:index-primary

Mode for generating primary index entries.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}index-primary |
| Defined in: | modules/index.xsl                                  |

## Description

When generating an index, each distinct `indexterm` is processed in `m:index-primary` mode to output its primary entry.

# m:index-secondary

Mode for generating secondary index entries.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}index-secondary |
| Defined in: | modules/index.xsl                                    |

## Description

When generating an index, each distinct secondary `indexterm` is processed in `m:index-secondary` mode to output its secondary entry.

# m:index-see

Mode for generating index “see” entries.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}index-see |
| Defined in: | modules/index.xsl                              |

## Description

When generating an index, each `indexterm` that defines a “see” index cross-reference is processed in `m:index-see` mode to output the cross-reference.

# m:index-seealso

Mode for generating index “see also” entries.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}index-seealso |
| Defined in: | modules/index.xsl                                  |

## Description

When generating an index, each `indexterm` that defines a “see also” index cross-reference is processed in `m:index-seealso` mode to output the cross-reference.

# m:index-tertiary

Mode for generating index tertiary entries.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}index-tertiary |
| Defined in: | modules/index.xsl                                   |

## Description

When generating an index, each distinct tertiary `indexterm` is processed in `m:index-tertiary` mode to output its tertiary entry.

# m:kr

Mode for processing funcsynopsis elements in the “K&R” style.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}kr |
| Defined in: | modules/programming.xsl (14)            |

## Description

The `funcsynopsis` element has several possible renderings. This mode is used when the “K&R” style of rendering has been selected and a non-tabular layout is being used.

See also: `m:kr-table` , `m:ansi` , `m:ansi-table` , `$funcsynopsis-default-style` , `$funcsynopsis-table-threshold` , and `$funcsynopsis-trailing-punctuation` .



# m:kr-args

Mode for processing function arguments.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }kr-args |
| Defined in: | modules/programming.xml (7)  |

## Description

This mode is used to process the parameters of a `funcsynopsis` in th K&R style. See `$funcsynopsis-default-style` .

# m:kr-table

Mode for processing funcsynopsis elements in the “K&R” style.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}kr-table |
| Defined in: | modules/programming.xsl (14)                  |

## Description

The `funcsynopsis` element has several possible renderings. This mode is used when the “K&R” style of rendering has been selected and a table will be used for layout.

See also: `m:kr` , `m:ansi` , `m:ansi-table` , `$funcsynopsis-default-style` , `$funcsynopsis-table-threshold` , and `$funcsynopsis-trailing-punctuation` .

# m:kr-table-args

Mode for processing function arguments in a table.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }kr-table-args |
| Defined in: | modules/programming.xml (7)  |

## Description

When the tabular presentation of a “K&R” `funcsynopsis` is being generated, this mode is used to process the function arguments.

# m:link

Process inline links.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}link |
| Defined in: | modules/links.xsl (2)                     |

## Description

DocBook allows `xlink:href` to appear on most elements. All inline elements are processed in `m:link` mode to add a link around them if they specify an `xlink:href`.

# m:list-of-equations

Mode for generating a list of equations.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}list-of-equations |
| Defined in: | modules/toc.xsl (2)                                    |

## Description

If `$lists-of-equations` is true, then a list of equations will be generated. This mode is used to process the `equation` elements (if any) to produce that list.

# m:list-of-examples

Mode for generating a list of examples.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}list-of-examples |
| Defined in: | modules/toc.xsl (2)                                   |

## Description

If `$lists-of-examples` is true, then a list of examples will be generated. This mode is used to process the `example` elements (if any) to produce that list.

# m:list-of-figures

Mode for generating a list of figures.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}list-of-figures |
| Defined in: | modules/toc.xsl (2)                                  |

## Description

If `$lists-of-figures` is true, then a list of figures will be generated. This mode is used to process the `figure` elements (if any) to produce that list.

# m:list-of-procedures

Mode for generating a list of procedures.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}list-of-procedures |
| Defined in: | modules/toc.xsl (2)                                     |

## Description

If `$lists-of-procedures` is true, then a list of procedures will be generated. This mode is used to process the `procedure` elements (if any) to produce that list.



# m:list-of-tables

Mode for generating a list of tables.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }list-of-tables |
| Defined in: | modules/toc.xsl (2)   |

## Description

If `$lists-of-tables` is true, then a list of tables will be generated. This mode is used to process the `table` elements (if any) to produce that list.

# m:production-number

Mode for production numbers.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}production-number |
| Defined in: | modules/programming.xsl                                |

## Description

When a `productionset` is being formatted, the `m:production-number` mode is used to produce the production numbers.

# m:profile

Mode for document profiling.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}profile |
| Defined in: | modules/profile.xsl (3)                      |

## Description

All of the profile processing (see *Section 2.7, Effectivity attributes and profiling*) is done in this mode.

# m:pygments-options

Calculate the Pygments options for an element.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}pygments-options |
| Defined in: | modules/verbatim.xsl                                  |

## Description

When the Pygments syntax highlighter is being used, every element that will be highlighted is processed in this mode to generate options for the Pygments process.

# m:revhistory-list

Mode to generate a “list” presentation of `revhistory` .

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}revhistory-list |
| Defined in: | modules/blocks.xsl                                   |

## Description

The `revhistory` element can be rendered as a list or a table (see `$revhistory-style` ). The `m:revhistory-list` mode is used to render it as a list.

# m:revhistory-table

Mode to generate a “table” presentation of `revhistory` .

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}revhistory-table |
| Defined in: | modules/blocks.xsl                                    |

## Description

The `revhistory` element can be rendered as a list or a table (see `$revhistory-style` ). The `m:revhistory-table` mode is used to render it as a list.

# m:seglist-table

Process a `segmentedlist` as a table.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}seglist-table |
| Defined in: | modules/lists.xsl (4)                              |

## Description

Segmented lists can be presented in either a list format or a table format. If the tabular format is selected, the `segmentedlist` is processed in this mode to generate the table.

# m:segtitle-in-seg

Mode for processing segment titles in a segment.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}segtitle-in-seg |
| Defined in: | modules/lists.xsl                                    |

## Description

In a `segmentedlist`, each `segtitle` is processed once for each segment. This processing occurs in the `m:segtitle-in-seg` mode.



# m:synopfragment-bug

Mode for generating the mark for a `synopfragementref` .

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | {http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes}synopfragment-bug |
| Defined in: | modules/programming.xsl                                |

## Description

The `synopfragment` element allows a synopsis (for example a `cmdsynopsis` ) to move common fragments out-of-line. The location where these fragments occur in the primary synopsis is indicated with a `synopfragmentref` . The stylesheets will generate a mark, analogous to the marks used for footnotes or callouts, to connect the reference to the fragment. The fragment will be processed in `m:synopfragment-bug` to produce that mark.

# m:synopsis

Mode for processing programming language synopses.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }synopsis |
| Defined in: | modules/programming.xsl (8)   |

## Description

The elements of class, method, and field synopses are processed in this mode.

# m:title

Format a title.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }title |
| Defined in: | modules/titles.xsl   |

## Description

This mode is used to format titles when they appear in headlines or cross references.

# m:titlepage

Format elements for the title page.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }titlepage |
| Defined in: | modules/titlepage.xsl (9)  |

## Description

Elements that appear on the title page are processed in this mode to produce the text that will appear on the title page.

# m:to-uppercase

Produce content in upper-case.

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }to-uppercase |
| Defined in: | modules/info.xsl (4)  |

## Description

When formatting personal names in a style that requires converting a name to upper case (see *t:person-name*), this mode is used to generate the upper-case name.

# m:toc

Mode for generating tables of contents.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }toc |
| Defined in: | modules/blocks.xsl (4), modules/toc.xsl (12)   |

## Description

Elements are processed in `m:toc` when automatically constructing a Table of Contents (or, more generally, any list of elements).

See also `$generate-toc`, `$generate-nested-toc`, `$annotate-toc`, `$lists-of-figures`, `$lists-of-tables`, `$lists-of-examples`, `$lists-of-equations`, `$lists-of-procedures`, and `$section-toc-depth`.

# m:toc-entry

Format content for a list-of-titles.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mode:       | { <a href="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes">http://docbook.org/ns/docbook/modes</a> }toc-entry |
| Defined in: | modules/toc.xsl (4)  |

## Description

When an element appears in the Table of Contents (or other list of titles), it is formatted in this mode to produce the entry in the list.





## VI. Processing instruction reference

# current-dateTime

Resolves to a formatted date/time string.

|                         |                  |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| Processing instruction: | current-dateTime |
|-------------------------|------------------|

## Description

The `current-dateTime` processing instruction will be replaced by a formatted date and time. The date and time is controlled by three pseudo-attributes:

`dateTime`

The *ISO 8601* date or date/time to format. If not specified, defaults to the current date/time. If a date (and not a date/time) is specified, a default time of noon is assumed.

`offset`

An *ISO 8601* day/time duration or year/month duration. This value will be added to the `dateTime` that is to be formatted.

`format`

The format string to use. If not specified, the `$date-dateTime-format` is used.

For example:

```
<para>Published on  
<?current-dateTime format="[F]"?>.</para>
```

Will render like this:

Published on Friday.

# db

Provides additional control over rendering.

|                         |    |
|-------------------------|----|
| Processing instruction: | db |
|-------------------------|----|

## Description

The `db` processing instruction provides additional control over the rendering of a number of elements. It doesn't produce any output directly.

See also:

- `$align-char-default`, `$align-char-pad`, `$align-char-width`
- `$oxy-markup`
- `$revhistory-style`
- `$segmentedlist-style`
- `$xlink-style`
- `f:chunk-filename`
- `f:date-format`
- `f:pi`
- `f:pi-attributes`
- `f:verbatim-highlight`
- `f:verbatim-numbered`
- `f:verbatim-style`
- `f:verbatim-trim-trailing`
- `t:generate-index`
- `m:callout-bug`

# DocBook-xslTNG-version

Resolves to the DocBook stylesheet version.

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Processing instruction: | DocBook-xslTNG-version |
|-------------------------|------------------------|

## Description

The `DocBook-xslTNG-version` processing instruction will be replaced by the version number of the stylesheets.

For example:

```
<para>This document was formatted with the <citetitle>DocBook  
xslTNG Stylesheets</citetitle>  
version <?DocBook-xslTNG-version?>.</para>
```

Will render like this:

This document was formatted with the *DocBook xslTNG Stylesheets* version 1.8.0.

# system-property

Resolves to an XSLT system property.

|                         |                 |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| Processing instruction: | system-property |
|-------------------------|-----------------|

## Description

The `system-property` processing instruction will be replaced by the corresponding system property.

For example:

```
<para>This document was formatted with  
<?system-property xsl:product-name?>  
version <?system-property xsl:product-version?> on  
<?current-dateTime format="[D01] [MNn,*-3] [Y0001]"?>.  
</para>
```

Will render like this:

This document was formatted with SAXON version HE 11.3 on 30 Dec 2022.



## A. GNU Free Documentation License

GNU Free Documentation License  
Version 1.1, March 2000

Copyright (C) 2000 Free Software Foundation, Inc.  
51 Franklin St, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA  
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies  
of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

### 0. PREAMBLE

The purpose of this License is to make a manual, textbook, or other written document "free" in the sense of freedom: to assure everyone the effective freedom to copy and redistribute it, with or without modifying it, either commercially or noncommercially. Secondly, this License preserves for the author and publisher a way to get credit for their work, while not being considered responsible for modifications made by others.

This License is a kind of "copyleft", which means that derivative works of the document must themselves be free in the same sense. It complements the GNU General Public License, which is a copyleft license designed for free software.

We have designed this License in order to use it for manuals for free software, because free software needs free documentation: a free program should come with manuals providing the same freedoms that the software does. But this License is not limited to software manuals; it can be used for any textual work, regardless of subject matter or whether it is published as a printed book. We recommend this License principally for works whose purpose is instruction or reference.

### 1. APPLICABILITY AND DEFINITIONS

This License applies to any manual or other work that contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it can be distributed under the terms of this License. The "Document", below, refers to any such manual or work. Any member of the public is a licensee, and is addressed as "you".

A "Modified Version" of the Document means any work containing the Document or a portion of it, either copied verbatim, or with

modifications and/or translated into another language.

A "Secondary Section" is a named appendix or a front-matter section of the Document that deals exclusively with the relationship of the publishers or authors of the Document to the Document's overall subject (or to related matters) and contains nothing that could fall directly within that overall subject. (For example, if the Document is in part a textbook of mathematics, a Secondary Section may not explain any mathematics.) The relationship could be a matter of historical connection with the subject or with related matters, or of legal, commercial, philosophical, ethical or political position regarding them.

The "Invariant Sections" are certain Secondary Sections whose titles are designated, as being those of Invariant Sections, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License.

The "Cover Texts" are certain short passages of text that are listed, as Front-Cover Texts or Back-Cover Texts, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License.

A "Transparent" copy of the Document means a machine-readable copy, represented in a format whose specification is available to the general public, whose contents can be viewed and edited directly and straightforwardly with generic text editors or (for images composed of pixels) generic paint programs or (for drawings) some widely available drawing editor, and that is suitable for input to text formatters or for automatic translation to a variety of formats suitable for input to text formatters. A copy made in an otherwise Transparent file format whose markup has been designed to thwart or discourage subsequent modification by readers is not Transparent. A copy that is not "Transparent" is called "Opaque".

Examples of suitable formats for Transparent copies include plain ASCII without markup, Texinfo input format, LaTeX input format, SGML or XML using a publicly available DTD, and standard-conforming simple HTML designed for human modification. Opaque formats include PostScript, PDF, proprietary formats that can be read and edited only by proprietary word processors, SGML or XML for which the DTD and/or processing tools are not generally available, and the machine-generated HTML produced by some word processors for output purposes only.

The "Title Page" means, for a printed book, the title page itself, plus such following pages as are needed to hold, legibly, the material this License requires to appear in the title page. For works in



formats which do not have any title page as such, "Title Page" means the text near the most prominent appearance of the work's title, preceding the beginning of the body of the text.

### 2. VERBATIM COPYING

You may copy and distribute the Document in any medium, either commercially or noncommercially, provided that this License, the copyright notices, and the license notice saying this License applies to the Document are reproduced in all copies, and that you add no other conditions whatsoever to those of this License. You may not use technical measures to obstruct or control the reading or further copying of the copies you make or distribute. However, you may accept compensation in exchange for copies. If you distribute a large enough number of copies you must also follow the conditions in section 3.

You may also lend copies, under the same conditions stated above, and you may publicly display copies.

### 3. COPYING IN QUANTITY

If you publish printed copies of the Document numbering more than 100, and the Document's license notice requires Cover Texts, you must enclose the copies in covers that carry, clearly and legibly, all these Cover Texts: Front-Cover Texts on the front cover, and Back-Cover Texts on the back cover. Both covers must also clearly and legibly identify you as the publisher of these copies. The front cover must present the full title with all words of the title equally prominent and visible. You may add other material on the covers in addition. Copying with changes limited to the covers, as long as they preserve the title of the Document and satisfy these conditions, can be treated as verbatim copying in other respects.

If the required texts for either cover are too voluminous to fit legibly, you should put the first ones listed (as many as fit reasonably) on the actual cover, and continue the rest onto adjacent pages.

If you publish or distribute Opaque copies of the Document numbering more than 100, you must either include a machine-readable Transparent copy along with each Opaque copy, or state in or with each Opaque copy a publicly-accessible computer-network location containing a complete Transparent copy of the Document, free of added material, which the general network-using public has access to download anonymously at no

charge using public-standard network protocols. If you use the latter option, you must take reasonably prudent steps, when you begin distribution of Opaque copies in quantity, to ensure that this Transparent copy will remain thus accessible at the stated location until at least one year after the last time you distribute an Opaque copy (directly or through your agents or retailers) of that edition to the public.

It is requested, but not required, that you contact the authors of the Document well before redistributing any large number of copies, to give them a chance to provide you with an updated version of the Document.

### 4. MODIFICATIONS

You may copy and distribute a Modified Version of the Document under the conditions of sections 2 and 3 above, provided that you release the Modified Version under precisely this License, with the Modified Version filling the role of the Document, thus licensing distribution and modification of the Modified Version to whoever possesses a copy of it. In addition, you must do these things in the Modified Version:

- A. Use in the Title Page (and on the covers, if any) a title distinct from that of the Document, and from those of previous versions (which should, if there were any, be listed in the History section of the Document). You may use the same title as a previous version if the original publisher of that version gives permission.
- B. List on the Title Page, as authors, one or more persons or entities responsible for authorship of the modifications in the Modified Version, together with at least five of the principal authors of the Document (all of its principal authors, if it has less than five).
- C. State on the Title page the name of the publisher of the Modified Version, as the publisher.
- D. Preserve all the copyright notices of the Document.
- E. Add an appropriate copyright notice for your modifications adjacent to the other copyright notices.
- F. Include, immediately after the copyright notices, a license notice giving the public permission to use the Modified Version under the terms of this License, in the form shown in the Addendum below.
- G. Preserve in that license notice the full lists of Invariant Sections and required Cover Texts given in the Document's license notice.
- H. Include an unaltered copy of this License.
- I. Preserve the section entitled "History", and its title, and add to it an item stating at least the title, year, new authors, and publisher of the Modified Version as given on the Title Page. If there is no section entitled "History" in the Document, create one

stating the title, year, authors, and publisher of the Document as given on its Title Page, then add an item describing the Modified Version as stated in the previous sentence.

- J. Preserve the network location, if any, given in the Document for public access to a Transparent copy of the Document, and likewise the network locations given in the Document for previous versions it was based on. These may be placed in the "History" section. You may omit a network location for a work that was published at least four years before the Document itself, or if the original publisher of the version it refers to gives permission.
- K. In any section entitled "Acknowledgements" or "Dedications", preserve the section's title, and preserve in the section all the substance and tone of each of the contributor acknowledgements and/or dedications given therein.
- L. Preserve all the Invariant Sections of the Document, unaltered in their text and in their titles. Section numbers or the equivalent are not considered part of the section titles.
- M. Delete any section entitled "Endorsements". Such a section may not be included in the Modified Version.
- N. Do not retitle any existing section as "Endorsements" or to conflict in title with any Invariant Section.

If the Modified Version includes new front-matter sections or appendices that qualify as Secondary Sections and contain no material copied from the Document, you may at your option designate some or all of these sections as invariant. To do this, add their titles to the list of Invariant Sections in the Modified Version's license notice. These titles must be distinct from any other section titles.

You may add a section entitled "Endorsements", provided it contains nothing but endorsements of your Modified Version by various parties--for example, statements of peer review or that the text has been approved by an organization as the authoritative definition of a standard.

You may add a passage of up to five words as a Front-Cover Text, and a passage of up to 25 words as a Back-Cover Text, to the end of the list of Cover Texts in the Modified Version. Only one passage of Front-Cover Text and one of Back-Cover Text may be added by (or through arrangements made by) any one entity. If the Document already includes a cover text for the same cover, previously added by you or by arrangement made by the same entity you are acting on behalf of, you may not add another; but you may replace the old one, on explicit permission from the previous publisher that added the old one.

The author(s) and publisher(s) of the Document do not by this License

give permission to use their names for publicity for or to assert or imply endorsement of any Modified Version.

### 5. COMBINING DOCUMENTS

You may combine the Document with other documents released under this License, under the terms defined in section 4 above for modified versions, provided that you include in the combination all of the Invariant Sections of all of the original documents, unmodified, and list them all as Invariant Sections of your combined work in its license notice.

The combined work need only contain one copy of this License, and multiple identical Invariant Sections may be replaced with a single copy. If there are multiple Invariant Sections with the same name but different contents, make the title of each such section unique by adding at the end of it, in parentheses, the name of the original author or publisher of that section if known, or else a unique number. Make the same adjustment to the section titles in the list of Invariant Sections in the license notice of the combined work.

In the combination, you must combine any sections entitled "History" in the various original documents, forming one section entitled "History"; likewise combine any sections entitled "Acknowledgements", and any sections entitled "Dedications". You must delete all sections entitled "Endorsements."

### 6. COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS

You may make a collection consisting of the Document and other documents released under this License, and replace the individual copies of this License in the various documents with a single copy that is included in the collection, provided that you follow the rules of this License for verbatim copying of each of the documents in all other respects.

You may extract a single document from such a collection, and distribute it individually under this License, provided you insert a copy of this License into the extracted document, and follow this License in all other respects regarding verbatim copying of that document.

### 7. AGGREGATION WITH INDEPENDENT WORKS

A compilation of the Document or its derivatives with other separate

and independent documents or works, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, does not as a whole count as a Modified Version of the Document, provided no compilation copyright is claimed for the compilation. Such a compilation is called an "aggregate", and this License does not apply to the other self-contained works thus compiled with the Document, on account of their being thus compiled, if they are not themselves derivative works of the Document.

If the Cover Text requirement of section 3 is applicable to these copies of the Document, then if the Document is less than one quarter of the entire aggregate, the Document's Cover Texts may be placed on covers that surround only the Document within the aggregate. Otherwise they must appear on covers around the whole aggregate.

## 8. TRANSLATION

Translation is considered a kind of modification, so you may distribute translations of the Document under the terms of section 4. Replacing Invariant Sections with translations requires special permission from their copyright holders, but you may include translations of some or all Invariant Sections in addition to the original versions of these Invariant Sections. You may include a translation of this License provided that you also include the original English version of this License. In case of a disagreement between the translation and the original English version of this License, the original English version will prevail.

## 9. TERMINATION

You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Document except as expressly provided for under this License. Any other attempt to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Document is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

## 10. FUTURE REVISIONS OF THIS LICENSE

The Free Software Foundation may publish new, revised versions of the GNU Free Documentation License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. See <http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/>.

## A. GNU Free Documentation License

Each version of the License is given a distinguishing version number. If the Document specifies that a particular numbered version of this License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that specified version or of any later version that has been published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation. If the Document does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation.

### ADDENDUM: How to use this License for your documents

To use this License in a document you have written, include a copy of the License in the document and put the following copyright and license notices just after the title page:

Copyright (c) YEAR YOUR NAME.

Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.1 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation; with the Invariant Sections being LIST THEIR TITLES, with the Front-Cover Texts being LIST, and with the Back-Cover Texts being LIST. A copy of the license is included in the section entitled "GNU Free Documentation License".

If you have no Invariant Sections, write "with no Invariant Sections" instead of saying which ones are invariant. If you have no Front-Cover Texts, write "no Front-Cover Texts" instead of "Front-Cover Texts being LIST"; likewise for Back-Cover Texts.

If your document contains nontrivial examples of program code, we recommend releasing these examples in parallel under your choice of free software license, such as the GNU General Public License, to permit their use in free software.

# Glossary

## Clark name

A Clark name is a way of unambiguously representing a qualified name (see *XML*) as a string. It consists of the namespace name in curly braces followed immediately by the local name. For example, the Clark name for the DocBook `para` element is: “`{http://docbook.org/ns/docbook}para`”.

## hamburger menu

The “hamburger menu” or “hamburger button ([https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hamburger\\_button](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hamburger_button))” is the name for the “≡” icon often used to indicate a menu of choices.

## intrinsic size

The intrinsic size of an object is it’s actual size, measured in absolute units, usually pixels. The stylesheets rely on extension functions to obtain the intrinsic size of objects; if the extension functions aren’t available or the image format is not recognized, no intrinsic size will be known.

## is true

XPath defines a boolean type, `xs:boolean`, that is either true or false. But for the purpose of passing parameters to the stylesheet at runtime, whether it’s from the command line, from a configuration file, or through some other means, it’s often more convenient to pass string values. This saves the user from having to use whatever extra syntactic mechanisms would be required to identify the type of the variable.

To this end, many “boolean” parameters are actually strings. A string value `is true` if it consists of one of the strings “true”, “yes”, or “1”.

## object

In this guide, the term “object” is used to refer generally to any image, video, or audio media element. They have a width and a height but no useful internal structure from the perspective of the stylesheets.

## pseudo-attribute

Processing instructions (see *XML*) have no internal structure. The stylesheets interrogate the `db` processing instruction to determine formatting properties for a number of different elements.

## Glossary

In order to make it easy to consistently specify different properties, the value of the processing instruction is parsed as if it contained attributes. These *pseudo-attributes* must consist of a name, followed by “=”, followed by a quoted string.



## References

- [AntennaHouse] *AH Formatter* (<https://www.antennahouse.com/>). Version 7.0.3.
- [ISO 8601] *ISO 8601-1:2019 Date and time — Representations for information interchange — Part 1: Basic rules*. ISO (International Organization for Standardization). 2019-02.
- [CSS] *What Is CSS?* (<https://www.w3.org/Style/CSS/>). A family of standards developed by the W3C.
- [TR 9901:1999] *XML Exchange Table Model Document Type Definition* (<https://www.oasis-open.org/specs/tm9901.htm>). Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards (OASIS) Technical Memorandum TR 9901:1999. Tables Technical Committee. Norman Walsh, editor.
- [TR 9502:1995] *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition* (<https://www.oasis-open.org/specs/tm9502.html>). SGML Open Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995. Table Interchange Subcommittee. Harvey Bingham, editor.
- [Gradle] *Gradle* (<https://gradle.org/>).
- [RFC 5147] *URI Fragment Identifiers for the text/plain Media Type* (<https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc5147>). E. Wilde and M. Duerst, editors. Internet Engineering Task Force. 2008.
- [MathJax] *MathJax* (<https://www.mathjax.org/>).
- [OldMeasure] *The Old Measure: An Inquiry Into the Origins of the U.S. Customary System of Weights and Measures* (<https://www.amazon.com/Old-Measure-Inquiry-Customary-Measures/dp/0615376266>). 2010. Jon Bosak.
- [Prince] *Prince* (<https://www.princexml.com/>). Version 13.5.
- [Transclusion] *DocBook Transclusion* (<https://docbook.org/docs/transclusion/transclusion.html>). 2015. Jirka Koskek.
- [Names] *Falsehoods Programmers Believe About Names* (<https://www.kalzumeus.com/2010/06/17/falsehoods-programmers-believe-about-names/>). 2010. Patrick McKenzie.
- [XML] Tim Bray, Jean Paoli, C. M. Sperberg-McQueen, and Eve Maler, editors. *Extensible Markup Language (XML) 1.0 Fifth Edition* (<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml>). World Wide Web Consortium, 2008.
- [XInclude] Jonathan Marsh, David Orchard, and Daniel Veillard, editors. *XML Inclusions (XInclude) Version 1.0 (Second Edition)* (<http://www.w3.org/TR/xinclude>). World Wide Web Consortium, 2006.
- [Pygments] *Pygments: Python Syntax Highlighter* (<https://pygments.org/>). Version 2.6.1.

## References

[highlight.js] *highlight.js* (<https://highlightjs.org/>). Version 10.1.2.

[Prism] *Prism* (<https://prismjs.com/>). Version 1.20.0.

[metadata-extractor] *metadata-extractor* (<https://drewnoakes.com/code/exif/>). Version 2.14.0.

[search] *Searching text/plain documents with a fragid* (<https://norman.walsh.name/2016/09/29/search>).

[XSLT 1.0] *XSL Transformations (XSLT) Version 1.0* (<https://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xslt-19991116>). James Clark, editor. W3C Recommendation. 16 November 1999.

[XSLT 2.0] *XSL Transformations (XSLT) Version 2.0* (<http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt20/>). Michael Kay, editor. W3C Recommendation. 23 January 2007.

[XSLT 3.0] *XSL Transformations (XSLT) Version 3.0* (<http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt-30/>). Michael Kay, editor. W3C Recommendation. 8 June 2017.

[XSL FO] *Extensible Stylesheet Language (XSL) Version 1.1* (<https://www.w3.org/TR/xsl/>). Anders Berglund, Editor. W3C Recommendation. 5 December 2006.

## Acknowledgements

I'd like to thank The Academy, the...no, wrong event.

DocBook has benefited immeasurably by the time and energy that innumerable people have poured into it. I thank them all.

This project has benefited from the generous support of Michael Kay and Saxonica for *Saxon EE* and Micheal Miller and AntennaHouse for *AH Formatter*.

Bethan Tovey-Walsh designed the lovely xslTNG logo.



# Index

## D

db processing instruction, 59, 143, 179, 184, 213, 290, 294, 331, 332, 349, 350, 350, 351, 352, 372, 400, 483

- align-char-width pseudo-attribute, 59
- align-char-pad pseudo-attribute, 59
- oxy-markup pseudo-attribute, 143
- revhistory-style pseudo-attribute, 179
- segmentedlist-style pseudo-attribute, 184
- table-summary pseudo-attribute, 184
- xlink-style pseudo-attribute, 213
- annotations pseudo-attribute, 290, 290, 290
- date-format pseudo-attribute, 294
- verbatim-highlight pseudo-attribute, 349
- verbatim-numbered pseudo-attribute, 350
- verbatim-style pseudo-attribute, 350, 351
- verbatim-trim-trailing pseudo-attribute, 352
- autoindex pseudo-attribute, 372
- starting-callout-number pseudo-attribute, 400

## E

EPS image, 134

## F

function

- absolute-length, 284
- attributes, 285
- cals-colsep, 286
- cals-rowsep, 287
- check-gentext, 288
- chunk, 289
- chunk-filename, 290

- chunk-title, 291
- css-length, 292
- css-property, 293
- date-format, 294
- empty-length, 296
- equal-lengths, 298
- generate-id, 299
- gentext, 300
- gentext-letters, 301
- gentext-letters-for-language, 302
- highlight-verbatim, 303
- href, 304
- id, 305
- intra-number-separator, 306
- is-empty-length, 307
- is-true, 308
- l10n-language, 309
- label-separator, 310
- language, 311
- length-string, 312
- length-units, 313
- make-length, 314
- number-separator, 315
- object-align, 316
- object-contentheight, 317
- object-contentwidth, 318
- object-height, 319
- object-properties, 320
- object-scale, 323
- object-scalefit, 324
- object-valign, 325
- object-width, 326
- orderedlist-item-numeration, 327
- orderedlist-item-number, 328
- orderedlist-startingnumber, 329
- parse-length, 330
- pi, 331
- pi-attributes, 332
- post-label-punctuation, 333
- refsection, 334
- relative-length, 335
- resolve-object-uri, 336
- section, 337
- section-depth, 338
- select-mediaobject, 339

- select-mediaobject-data, 340
- spaces, 341
- step-number, 342
- step-numeration, 343
- syntax-highlight, 344
- target, 345
- template, 346
- tokenize-on-char, 347
- unique-id, 348
- verbatim-highlight, 349
- verbatim-numbered, 350
- verbatim-style, 351
- verbatim-trim-trailing, 352
- xlink-style, 353
- xpointer-idref, 354
- cwd, 355
- image-metadata, 356
- image-properties, 358
- pygmentize, 359
- pygmentize-available, 360
- xinclude, 361
- validate-with-relax-ng, 362

## J

JavaScript, 213

## M

mode

- acceptable-mediaobject, 392
- acceptable-mediaobject-data, 393
- annotation-content, 394
- ansi, 395
- ansi-table, 396
- attributes, 397
- biblioentry, 398
- bibliomixed, 399
- callout-bug, 400
- callout-link, 401
- chunk-cleanup, 402
- chunk-filename, 403
- chunk-output, 404
- chunk-title, 405
- chunk-write, 406
- copyright-years, 407

- crossref, 408
- crossref-inherit-separator, 409
- crossref-label, 410
- crossref-label-separator, 411
- crossref-number, 412
- crossref-number-separator, 413
- crossref-prefix, 414
- crossref-suffix, 415
- crossref-title, 416
- details, 417
- details-attribute, 418
- docbook, 419
- footnote-number, 420
- footnotes, 421
- generate-titlepage, 422
- headline, 423
- headline-label, 424
- headline-label-separator, 425
- headline-number, 426
- headline-number-separator, 427
- headline-prefix, 428
- headline-suffix, 429
- headline-title, 430
- highlight-options, 431
- html-body-script, 432
- html-head, 433
- html-head-last, 434
- html-head-links, 435
- html-head-script, 436
- htmltable, 437
- index-div, 438
- index-primary, 439
- index-secondary, 440
- index-see, 441
- index-seealso, 442
- index-tertiary, 443
- kr, 444
- kr-args, 445
- kr-table, 446
- kr-table-args, 447
- link, 448
- list-of-equations, 449
- list-of-examples, 450
- list-of-figures, 451
- list-of-procedures, 452
- list-of-tables, 453
- production-number, 454
- profile, 455

- pygments-options, 456
- revhistory-list, 457
- revhistory-table, 458
- seglst-table, 459
- segtile-in-seg, 460
- synopfragment-bug, 461
- synopsis, 462
- title, 463
- titlepage, 464
- to-uppercase, 465
- toc, 466
- toc-entry, 467

## P

### param

- user-css-links, 2, 36, 192, 193
- use-docbook-css, 2, 36, 192
- output-media, 2, 142, 142
- page-style, 2, 145
- paper-size, 2, 146
- resource-base-uri, 18, 177, 177
- chunk, 25, 70
- chunk-output-base-uri, 25, 75
- chunk-include, 25, 41, 41, 71, 72, 78, 226
- chunk-exclude, 25, 41, 41, 71, 72, 78, 226
- persistent-toc, 26, 36, 147, 150, 370
- chunk-nav, 26, 26, 73, 73
- profile-os, 28, 29, 159, 159
- profile-arch, 29, 154, 154
- profile-audience, 29, 155, 155
- profile-condition, 29, 156, 156
- profile-conformance, 29, 157, 157
- profile-lang, 29, 158, 158
- profile-outputformat, 29, 160, 160
- profile-revision, 29, 161, 161
- profile-revisionflag, 29, 162, 162
- profile-role, 29, 163, 163
- profile-security, 29, 164, 164
- profile-userlevel, 29, 166, 166
- profile-vendor, 29, 167, 167
- profile-wordsz, 29, 168, 168
- profile-separator, 29, 29, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 165, 166, 167, 168
- dynamic-profiles, 29, 98
- verbatim-syntax-highlighter, 30, 207, 243, 253
- verbatim-syntax-highlight-css, 36, 192, 205
- oxy-markup-css, 36, 36, 143, 144, 192
- persistent-toc-css, 36, 148, 192
- nominal-page-width, 41, 137, 137, 250, 250
- pixels-per-inch, 41, 151, 151, 262
- mediaobject-input-base-uri, 43, 135, 135, 248, 248
- mediaobject-output-base-uri, 43, 136, 136, 249, 249
- annotation-placement, 45, 64, 64
- additional-languages, 56, 56, 56
- default-language, 56, 91, 91, 311
- align-char-default, 57, 57
- align-char-pad, 57, 57
- align-char-width, 57, 57
- allow-eval, 60
- annotate-toc, 61
- annotation-collection, 62, 62, 62
- annotation-mark, 63, 63, 64
- annotation-style, 63, 65
- annotations-js, 66
- bibliography-collection, 67, 67, 67, 385
- callout-default-column, 68, 195, 195, 196
- callout-unicode-start, 69
- chunk-section-depth, 72, 78, 78, 78
- chunk-nav-js, 73, 74
- chunk-renumber-footnotes, 77, 100
- classsynopsis-indent, 79
- component-numbers-inherit, 80, 95, 181
- division-numbers-inherit, 80, 95, 180, 181
- section-numbers-inherit, 80, 95, 180, 181
- control-js, 81
- theme-picker, 81, 169, 255
- copyright-collapse-years, 82
- copyright-year-range-separator, 83
- copyright-year-separator, 84
- date-date-format, 85, 85, 294
- date-dateTime-format, 85, 85, 294, 470
- dc-metadata, 86

- debug, 87, 87, 240, 357
- default-float-style, 90, 90, 90
- default-length-magnitude, 92, 330
- default-length-unit, 92, 330
- default-personal-name-style, 93, 93, 378
- default-theme, 94, 94, 255
- docbook-transclusion, 96, 96
- dynamic-profile-error, 97, 97, 228, 235, 235
- experimental-pmuj, 99, 99
- footnote-numeration, 100, 100, 191, 227
- formal-object-title-placement, 101, 101, 242
- funcsynopsis-default-style, 102, 102, 445
- funcsynopsis-table-threshold, 103, 103
- funcsynopsis-trailing-punctuation, 104
- generate-html-page, 105
- generate-index, 106, 106, 372
- generate-nested-toc, 107, 107, 182
- generate-toc, 108, 108, 182
- generate-trivial-toc, 109, 109
- generated-id-root, 110, 110
- generated-id-sep, 111, 111
- generator-metadata, 112
- gentext-language, 113, 113
- glossary-collection, 114, 114, 114
- glossary-sort-entries, 115, 115
- html-extension, 116
- image-ignore-scaling, 117, 317, 318, 319, 323, 326
- image-nominal-height, 118, 244
- image-nominal-width, 119, 245
- image-property-warning, 120
- index-on-type, 121, 121
- index-on-role, 121, 121
- index-show-entries, 122
- indexed-section-groups, 123, 123
- lists-of-equations, 124, 449
- lists-of-examples, 125, 450
- lists-of-figures, 126, 451
- lists-of-procedures, 127, 452
- lists-of-tables, 128, 453
- local-conventions, 129, 129, 174
- relax-ng-grammar, 129, 174, 174
- mathml-js, 131
- mediaobject-accessibility, 132
- mediaobject-exclude-extensions, 134, 134, 134, 393
- number-single-appendix, 138, 138
- olink-databases, 139, 139, 251
- orderedlist-item-numeration, 140, 140, 140, 140, 327
- othername-in-middle, 141, 141, 381
- oxy-markup, 143, 143
- persistent-toc-js, 149
- persistent-toc-search, 150
- procedure-step-numeration, 152, 152, 152, 152, 343
- productionset-lhs-rhs-separator, 153
- transclusion-prefix-separator, 170
- qandadiv-default-toc, 171
- qandaset-default-label, 172
- qandaset-default-toc, 173
- refentry-generate-name, 175, 175, 175, 176
- refentry-generate-title, 175, 176, 176, 176
- revhistory-style, 178, 178, 179, 457, 458
- section-numbers, 180, 180
- section-toc-depth, 182, 182, 182
- segmentedlist-style, 183, 183
- show-remarks, 185, 185
- sidebar-as-aside, 186, 186
- sort-collation, 187
- table-accessibility, 188
- table-footnote-numeration, 191
- variablelist-term-length-threshold, 194
- verbatim-callouts, 195, 195, 266, 273
- verbatim-line-style, 197, 267, 273, 351
- verbatim-number-every-nth, 198, 198, 199, 268, 268
- verbatim-number-first-line, 199, 199, 269
- verbatim-number-minlines, 200, 200, 270, 270
- verbatim-numbered-elements, 201, 271, 273, 350
- verbatim-plain-style, 202, 272, 273, 351
- verbatim-space, 203, 274
- verbatim-style-default, 204



verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages, 205, 206, 206, 275, 303, 344  
 verbatim-trim-trailing-blank-lines, 209, 209, 352  
 xlink-icon-closed, 210  
 xlink-icon-open, 210, 211  
 xlink-js, 212  
 xlink-style, 213, 213, 214, 353  
 xlink-style-default, 213, 214  
 xspec, 215

pi

, 470, 471, 472, 473

PNG image, 134

Pygments, 206, 276, 277

## S

Syntax highlighting

Pygments, 206, 276, 277

## T

template

biblioentry, 366  
 bottom-nav, 367  
 chunk-cleanup, 368  
 chunk-footnotes, 369  
 chunk-output, 370  
 docbook, 371  
 generate-index, 372  
 imagemap, 373  
 index-zone-reference, 374  
 inline, 375  
 person-name, 377  
 person-name-family-given, 380  
 person-name-first-last, 381  
 person-name-last-first, 383  
 person-name-list, 384  
 preprocess, 385  
 process, 386  
 postprocess, 387  
 table-footnotes, 388  
 top-nav, 389  
 xlink, 390

## V

variable

v:unit-scale, 42, 262  
 chunk-filter-namespaces, 71, 72, 226  
 v:chunk-renumber-footnotes, 77, 227  
 v:title-properties, 80, 95, 180, 181, 264  
 copyright-collapse-years, 82, 83, 84, 407  
 copyright-year-range-separator, 82, 84, 407  
 copyright-year-separator, 82, 83, 407  
 theme-list, 94, 255  
 mediaobject-accessibility, 132, 190  
 table-accessibility, 133, 188  
 v:mediaobject-input-base-uri, 135  
 v:mediaobject-output-base-uri, 136  
 v:verbatim-plain-style, 202  
 v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-options, 206  
 v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-pygments-options, 206  
 highlight-js-head-elements, 207, 243  
 prism-js-head-elements, 208, 253  
 admonition-icons, 218  
 arg-choice-def-close-str, 219  
 arg-choice-def-open-str, 219  
 arg-choice-opt-close-str, 219  
 arg-choice-opt-open-str, 219  
 arg-choice-plain-close-str, 219  
 arg-choice-plain-open-str, 219  
 arg-choice-req-close-str, 219  
 arg-choice-req-open-str, 219  
 arg-or-sep, 219  
 arg-rep-def-str, 219  
 arg-rep-norepeat-str, 219  
 arg-rep-repeat-str, 219  
 v:arg-choice-def-close-str, 221  
 v:arg-choice-def-open-str, 221  
 v:arg-choice-opt-close-str, 221  
 v:arg-choice-opt-open-str, 221  
 v:arg-choice-plain-close-str, 221  
 v:arg-choice-plain-open-str, 221  
 v:arg-choice-req-close-str, 221  
 v:arg-choice-req-open-str, 221  
 v:arg-or-sep, 221  
 v:arg-rep-def-str, 221  
 v:arg-rep-norepeat-str, 221

- v:arg-rep-repeat-str, 221
- annotation-close, 223
- bridgehead-map, 224
- chunk, 225
- v:chunk, 225
- chunk-renumber-footnotes, 227
- DYNAMIC-PROFILE-EVAL-ERROR, 228
- DYNAMIC-PROFILE-SYNTAX-ERROR, 229
- INTERNAL-HIGHLIGHT-ERROR, 230
- INTERNAL-RENUMBER-ERROR, 231
- INVALID-AREAREFS, 232
- INVALID-CALS, 233
- INVALID-CONSTRAINT, 234
- INVALID-DYNAMIC-PROFILE-ERROR, 235
- INVALID-INJECT, 236
- INVALID-NAME-STYLE, 237
- INVALID-PRODUCTIONRECAP, 238
- INVALID-TEMPLATE, 239
- debug, 240
- v:debug, 240
- dynamic-profile-variables, 241
- formal-object-title-placement, 242
- image-nominal-height, 244
- image-nominal-width, 245
- invisible-characters, 246
- locales, 247
- mediaobject-input-base-uri, 248
- mediaobject-output-base-uri, 249
- nominal-page-width, 250
- olink-databases, 251
- v:olink-databases, 251
- personal-name-styles, 252
- templates, 254
- v:templates, 254
- title-properties, 256
- v:user-title-properties, 258
- titlepage-default, 259
- v:titlepage-default, 259
- toc-close, 260
- toc-open, 261
- unit-scale, 262
- pixels-per-inch, 263, 263, 263, 263, 263, 263, 263, 284
- user-title-properties, 264
- user-xref-properties, 265
- v:xref-properties, 265
- verbatim-callouts, 266
- verbatim-line-style, 267
- verbatim-number-every-nth, 268
- verbatim-number-first-line, 269
- v:verbatim-number-every-nth, 269
- verbatim-number-minlines, 270
- verbatim-numbered-elements, 271
- verbatim-plain-style, 272
- verbatim-properties, 273
- verbatim-space, 274, 274
- verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages, 275
- verbatim-syntax-highlight-options, 276, 276
- verbatim-syntax-highlight-pygments-options, 277, 277
- VERSION, 278, 279
- VERSION-ID, 279, 279
- xref-properties, 280
- default-length-magnitude, 284
- default-length-unit, 284
- v:personal-name-styles, 378
- funcsynopsis-default-style, 395, 396, 444, 446
- funcsynopsis-table-threshold, 395, 396, 444, 446
- funcsynopsis-trailing-punctuation, 395, 396, 444, 446
- generate-toc, 466
- generate-nested-toc, 466
- annotate-toc, 466
- lists-of-figures, 466
- lists-of-tables, 466
- lists-of-examples, 466
- lists-of-equations, 466
- lists-of-procedures, 466
- section-toc-depth, 466

## Index by module

Many modules define related functions, templates, or variables.

### VERSION.xsl

\$v:VERSION, \$v:VERSION-ID

### drivers.xsl

t:chunk-cleanup, t:chunk-output, t:docbook, t:postprocess, t:preprocess, t:process

### highlight.xsl

, f:syntax-highlight(), f:syntax-highlight(), f:syntax-highlight()

### main.xsl

m:docbook, \$output-media

### modules/admonitions.xsl

m:docbook

### modules/annotations.xsl

m:annotation-content, m:docbook

### modules/attributes.xsl

m:attributes, m:docbook

### modules/bibliography.xsl

m:biblioentry, m:bibliomixed, m:docbook

## modules/blocks.xsl

m:docbook, m:revhistory-list, m:revhistory-table, m:toc

## modules/chunk-cleanup.xsl

t:bottom-nav, m:chunk-cleanup, t:chunk-footnotes, m:chunk-title, f:chunk-title(), ,  
m:footnote-number, , t:top-nav

## modules/chunk-output.xsl

m:chunk-output,

## modules/chunk.xsl

f:chunk(), m:chunk-filename, f:chunk-filename()

## modules/components.xsl

m:docbook

## modules/divisions.xsl

m:docbook

## modules/errors.xsl

\$dbe:DYNAMIC-PROFILE-EVAL-ERROR, \$dbe:DYNAMIC-PROFILE-SYNTAX-  
ERROR, \$dbe:INTERNAL-HIGHLIGHT-ERROR, \$dbe:INTERNAL-RENUMBER-  
ERROR, \$dbe:INVALID-AREAREFS, \$dbe:INVALID-CALS, \$dbe:INVALID-  
CONSTRAINT, \$dbe:INVALID-DYNAMIC-PROFILE-ERROR, \$dbe:INVALID-  
INJECT, \$dbe:INVALID-NAME-STYLE, \$dbe:INVALID-PRODUCTIONRECAP,  
\$dbe:INVALID-TEMPLATE

## modules/footnotes.xsl

m:docbook, , m:footnote-number, m:footnotes, t:table-footnotes

## modules/functions.xsl

f:attributes(), f:attributes(), f:check-gentext(), f:date-format(), f:generate-id(), f:gentext-letters(), f:gentext-letters-for-language(), f:href(), f:id(), f:intra-number-separator(), f:is-true(), f:l10n-language(), f:label-separator(), f:number-separator(), f:orderedlist-item-number(), f:orderedlist-item-numeration(), f:orderedlist-startingnumber(), f:pi(), f:pi(), f:pi-attributes(), f:post-label-punctuation(), f:post-label-punctuation(), f:refsection(), f:section(), f:section-depth(), f:spaces(), f:step-number(), f:step-numeration(), f:target(), f:tokenize-on-char()

## modules/gentext.xsl

\$additional-languages, \$default-language, f:gentext(), f:gentext(), f:language(), \$v:locales

## modules/glossary.xsl

m:docbook

## modules/head.xsl

m:html-body-script, m:html-head, m:html-head-last, , m:html-head-links, , , m:html-head-script

## modules/index.xsl

m:docbook, t:generate-index, m:index-div, m:index-primary, m:index-secondary, m:index-see, m:index-seealso, m:index-tertiary, t:index-zone-reference,

## modules/info.xsl

m:copyright-years, m:docbook, t:person-name, t:person-name-family-given, t:person-name-first-last, t:person-name-last-first, t:person-name-list, m:to-uppercase

## modules/inlines.xsl

m:docbook, t:inline

## modules/links.xsl

m:docbook, m:link

## modules/lists.xsl

m:callout-link, m:docbook, m:seglst-table, m:segtitle-in-seg

## modules/msgset.xsl

m:docbook

## modules/objects.xsl

m:acceptable-mediaobject, m:acceptable-mediaobject-data, f:css-length(), f:css-property(), m:details, m:details-attribute, m:docbook, , t:imagemap, f:object-align(), f:object-contentheight(), f:object-contentwidth(), f:object-height(), f:object-properties(), f:object-scale(), f:object-scalefit(), f:object-valign(), f:object-width(), f:resolve-object-uri(), f:select-mediaobject(), f:select-mediaobject-data(), f:select-mediaobject-data()

## modules/profile.xsl

\$v:dynamic-profile-variables, m:profile

## modules/programming.xsl

m:ansi, m:ansi-table, m:docbook, m:kr, m:kr-args, m:kr-table, m:kr-table-args, m:production-number, m:synopfragment-bug, m:synopsis

## modules/publishers.xsl

m:docbook

## modules/refentry.xsl

m:docbook

## modules/sections.xsl

\$v:bridgehead-map, m:docbook

## modules/shared.xsl

f:generate-id(), f:generate-id(), \$generated-id-root, \$generated-id-sep, f:id(), f:unique-id()

## modules/tablecals.xsl

f:cals-colsep(), f:cals-rowsep(), m:docbook

## modules/tablehtml.xsl

m:docbook, m:htmltable

## modules/templates.xsl

t:biblioentry, , m:docbook, , m:generate-titlepage, f:template(), \$v:templates, \$v:titlepage-default

## modules/titlepage.xsl

m:titlepage

## modules/titles.xsl

m:headline, m:headline-label, m:headline-label-separator, m:headline-number, m:headline-number-separator, m:headline-prefix, m:headline-suffix, m:headline-title, , m:title, \$v:title-properties, \$v:user-title-properties

## modules/toc.xsl

m:docbook, m:list-of-equations, m:list-of-examples, m:list-of-figures, m:list-of-procedures, m:list-of-tables, m:toc, , m:toc-entry

## modules/unhandled.xsl

m:docbook

## modules/units.xsl

f:absolute-length(), f:empty-length(), f:equal-lengths(), f:is-empty-length(), f:length-string(), f:length-units(), f:make-length(), f:make-length(), f:make-length(), f:parse-length(), f:relative-length(), \$v:unit-scale

## modules/variable.xsl

\$v:admonition-icons, \$v:annotation-close, \$v:arg-choice-def-close-str, \$v:arg-choice-def-open-str, \$v:arg-choice-opt-close-str, \$v:arg-choice-opt-open-str, \$v:arg-choice-plain-close-str, \$v:arg-choice-plain-open-str, \$v:arg-choice-req-close-str, \$v:arg-choice-req-open-str, \$v:arg-or-sep, \$v:arg-rep-def-str, \$v:arg-rep-norepeat-str, \$v:arg-rep-repeat-str, \$v:chunk-filter-namespaces, \$v:chunk-renumber-footnotes, \$v:debug, \$v:formal-object-title-placement, \$v:highlight-js-head-elements, \$v:image-nominal-height, \$v:image-nominal-width, \$v:mediaobject-input-base-uri, \$v:mediaobject-output-base-uri, \$v:nominal-page-width, \$v:olink-databases, \$v:personal-name-styles, \$v:prism-js-head-elements, \$v:theme-list, \$v:toc-close, \$v:toc-open, \$v:verbatim-callouts, \$v:verbatim-line-style, \$v:verbatim-number-every-nth, \$v:verbatim-number-first-line, \$v:verbatim-number-minlines, \$v:verbatim-numbered-elements, \$v:verbatim-plain-style, \$v:verbatim-space, \$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages, \$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-options, \$v:verbatim-syntax-highlight-pygments-options

## modules/verbatim.xsl

m:callout-bug, , m:docbook, , m:highlight-options, f:highlight-verbatim(), , \$v:invisible-characters, m:pygments-options, f:verbatim-highlight(), f:verbatim-numbered(), \$v:verbatim-properties, f:verbatim-style(), f:verbatim-trim-trailing()

## modules/xlink.xsl

m:docbook, , , t:xlink, , f:xlink-style(), , f:xpointer-idref()

## modules/xref.xsl

m:crossref, m:crossref-inherit-separator, m:crossref-label, m:crossref-label-separator, m:crossref-number, m:crossref-number-separator, m:crossref-prefix, m:crossref-suffix, m:crossref-title, \$v:user-xref-properties, \$v:xref-properties



## param.xsl

\$align-char-default, \$align-char-pad, \$align-char-width, \$allow-eval, \$annotate-toc,  
 \$annotation-collection, \$annotation-mark, \$annotation-placement, \$annotation-style,  
 \$annotations-js, \$bibliography-collection, \$callout-default-column, \$callout-unicode-start,  
 \$v:chunk, \$chunk, \$chunk-exclude, \$chunk-include, \$chunk-nav, \$chunk-nav-js, \$chunk-  
 output-base-uri, \$chunk-renumber-footnotes, \$chunk-section-depth, \$classsynopsis-indent,  
 \$component-numbers-inherit, \$control-js, \$copyright-collapse-years, \$copyright-year-  
 range-separator, \$copyright-year-separator, \$date-date-format, \$date-dateTime-format, \$dc-  
 metadata, \$debug, \$default-float-style, \$default-length-magnitude, \$default-length-unit,  
 \$default-personal-name-style, \$default-theme, \$division-numbers-inherit, \$docbook-  
 transclusion, \$dynamic-profile-error, \$dynamic-profiles, \$experimental-pmuj, \$footnote-  
 numeration, \$formal-object-title-placement, \$funcsynopsis-default-style, \$funcsynopsis-  
 table-threshold, \$funcsynopsis-trailing-punctuation, \$generate-html-page, \$generate-index,  
 \$generate-nested-toc, \$generate-toc, \$generate-trivial-toc, \$generator-metadata, \$gentext-  
 language, \$glossary-collection, \$glossary-sort-entries, \$html-extension, \$image-ignore-  
 scaling, \$image-nominal-height, \$image-nominal-width, \$image-property-warning, \$index-  
 on-role, \$index-on-type, \$index-show-entries, \$indexed-section-groups, \$lists-of-equations,  
 \$lists-of-examples, \$lists-of-figures, \$lists-of-procedures, \$lists-of-tables, \$local-  
 conventions, \$mathml-js, \$mediaobject-accessibility, \$mediaobject-exclude-extensions,  
 \$mediaobject-input-base-uri, \$mediaobject-output-base-uri, \$nominal-page-width,  
 \$number-single-appendix, \$olink-databases, \$orderedlist-item-numeration, \$othername-in-  
 middle, \$soxy-markup, \$soxy-markup-css, \$page-style, \$paper-size, \$persistent-toc,  
 \$persistent-toc-css, \$persistent-toc-js, \$persistent-toc-search, \$pixels-per-inch, \$procedure-  
 step-numeration, \$productionset-lhs-rhs-separator, \$profile-arch, \$profile-audience,  
 \$profile-condition, \$profile-conformance, \$profile-lang, \$profile-os, \$profile-outputformat,  
 \$profile-revision, \$profile-revisionflag, \$profile-role, \$profile-security, \$profile-separator,  
 \$profile-userlevel, \$profile-vendor, \$profile-wordsz, \$qandadiv-default-toc, \$qandaset-  
 default-label, \$qandaset-default-toc, \$refentry-generate-name, \$refentry-generate-title,  
 \$relax-ng-grammar, \$resource-base-uri, \$revhistory-style, \$section-numbers, \$section-  
 numbers-inherit, \$section-toc-depth, \$segmentedlist-style, \$show-remarks, \$sidebar-as-  
 aside, \$sort-collation, \$stable-accessibility, \$stable-footnote-numeration, \$theme-picker,  
 \$transclusion-prefix-separator, \$use-docbook-css, \$user-css-links, \$variablelist-term-length-  
 threshold, \$verbatim-callouts, \$verbatim-line-style, \$verbatim-number-every-nth,  
 \$verbatim-number-first-line, \$verbatim-number-minlines, \$verbatim-numbered-elements,  
 \$verbatim-plain-style, \$verbatim-space, \$verbatim-style-default, \$verbatim-syntax-  
 highlight-css, \$verbatim-syntax-highlight-languages, \$verbatim-syntax-highlighter,  
 \$verbatim-trim-trailing-blank-lines, \$xlink-icon-closed, \$xlink-icon-open, \$xlink-js, \$xlink-  
 style, \$xlink-style-default, \$xspec

*DocBook xslTNG*

Copyright © 2020–2022 Norman Walsh.

All Rights Reserved.

Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.1 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. A copy of the license is included in *Appendix A, GNU Free Documentation License*.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book and the authors were aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed in caps or initial caps.

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the publisher and author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.